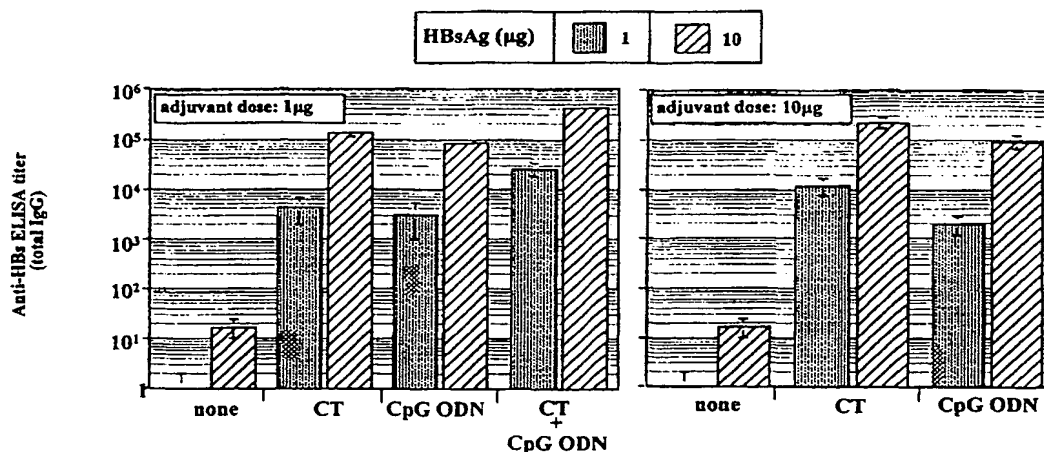




## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>A61K 39/39, 31/70, 39/00, 9/00</b>		<b>A2</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 99/61056</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 2 December 1999 (02.12.99)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US99/11359		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(22) International Filing Date: 21 May 1999 (21.05.99)			
(30) Priority Data: 60/086,393 22 May 1998 (22.05.98) US			
(71) Applicants: LOEB HEALTH RESEARCH INSTITUTE AT THE OTTAWA HOSPITAL [CA/CA]; 725 Parkdale Avenue, Ottawa, Ontario K1Y 4E9 (CA). CPG IMMUNOPHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; Suite 120, 55 William Street, Wellesley, MA 02481 (US).			
(72) Inventors: MCCLUSKIE, Michael, J.; 504-345 Clarence Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1N 5R5 (CA). DAVIS, Heather, L.; 33 Willard Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1S 1T4 (CA).			
(74) Agent: LOCKHART, Helen, C.; Wolf, Greenfield & Sacks, P.C., 600 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210 (US).			
		<b>Published</b> <i>Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.</i>	

(54) Title: METHODS AND PRODUCTS FOR INDUCING MUCOSAL IMMUNITY



## (57) Abstract

The invention relates methods and products for inducing mucosal immunity. In particular, the invention relates to the use of immunostimulatory oligonucleotides containing a CpG motif for inducing mucosal immunity. The CpG immunostimulatory oligonucleotides may be administered alone or in combination with antigen and/or with other adjuvants.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

## **METHODS AND PRODUCTS FOR INDUCING MUCOSAL IMMUNITY**

### **Field Of The Invention**

The present invention relates methods and products for inducing mucosal immunity.

5 In particular, the invention relates to the use of immunostimulatory oligonucleotides containing a CpG motif alone or in combination with other mucosal adjuvants for inducing mucosal immunity.

### **Background Of The Invention**

Two distinct compartments of the immune system have been identified: (i) the  
10 systemic, which comprises the bone marrow, spleen and lymph nodes, and (ii) the mucosal, which comprises lymphoid tissue associated with mucosal surfaces and external secretory glands (McGhee *et al.*, 1992). Mucosal surfaces are associated with the gastrointestinal (GI), genitourinary (GU) and respiratory tracts. Each compartment is associated with both humoral (antibodies) and cell-mediated (cytotoxic T-cells) responses, however there are differences in  
15 the nature of the immune responses induced in each compartment. Antibodies associated with the systemic compartment are predominantly of the IgG isotype, which function to neutralize pathogens in the circulatory system. In contrast, antibodies in the mucosae are primarily secretory IgA (S-IgA), which function to prevent entry of the pathogen into the body via the mucosal surface (Lamm *et al.*, 1992). Systemic immunity cannot prevent entry of pathogenic  
20 organisms at mucosal surfaces.

Successful systemic immunization (i.e., delivery of antigen to the systemic compartment) will induce systemic immunity but does not usually yield mucosal immune responses. In contrast, antigen delivered at mucosal surfaces triggers both mucosal (at local and sometimes at distant sites) and systemic responses (Haneberg *et al.*, 1994, Gallichan and  
25 Rosenthal, 1995).

Most vaccines developed to date are delivered parenterally, for example by intramuscular (IM) or intradermal (ID) injection, and as such induce primarily systemic immunity. However, the combined mucosal surface area is more than 200 times greater than that of the skin and is the primary site of transmission of numerous infectious diseases.  
30 Therefore, current vaccination strategies permit the pathogen to enter the body and only fight

it once it is in circulation. Infection and morbidity rates could be reduced if effective mucosal immunity could be induced. Furthermore, there is evidence that mucosal vaccines may have a broader age range of recipients. Finally, mucosal vaccines are often administered by non-invasive means (e.g., nose drops, nasal spray, inhaled nebulizer), thus they are easier and less expensive to administer, have less need for trained personnel and no risk of needle stick injury or cross contamination (for reviews see Mestecky *et al.*, 1992, Staats *et al.*, 1994, O'Hagan 1994).

As mentioned above, the hallmark of mucosal immunity is local production of S-IgA antibodies. These constitute > 80% of all antibodies in mucosae-associated tissues and are induced, transported and regulated by mechanisms quite distinct from those of the systemic response. IgA is of primary importance to the host defense because it acts not only to resist strict mucosal pathogens but also of the many microorganisms which initially colonize mucosal surfaces but subsequently cause systemic disease. There appear to be three sites of IgA mediated mucosal defense: (i) in the lumen, where S-IgA can neutralize viruses, bacterial toxins and enzymes, and act as a mucosal barrier to prevent viral attachment, microbial adherence and adsorption of antigen; (ii) within epithelial cells where dimeric IgA can bind to intracellular antigen; (iii) within the lamina propria where dimeric IgA can complex with antigen and the immune complex thus formed transported to the lumen (Lamm *et al.*, 1992).

Many vaccines in development are composed of synthetic or recombinant antigens (peptides or polypeptides). These are considered safer than traditional attenuated or inactivated whole pathogens, however they are often poorly immunogenic and require adjuvants to enhance specific immunity. For systemic administration, aluminum precipitates (alum) may be added to the antigens to augment immune responses. Alum is currently the only adjuvant licensed for human use in most countries including the USA, however it is not suitable for delivery to mucosal surfaces. Therefore most mucosal vaccines used today contain live-attenuated organisms, and little success has been obtained with mucosal delivery of subunit vaccines.

Cholera toxin (CT) is the mucosal adjuvant most commonly used in animal models. CT is the primary enterotoxin produced by *Vibrio cholerae*. It is an 84 kilodalton polymeric protein consisting of two subunits, a monomeric A subunit and a pentameric ring shaped B subunit. The B subunit binds GM1 gangliosides at the surface of eukaryotic cells and enables



insertion of the A subunit into the cytosol, where it ADP-ribosylates GTP-binding regulatory protein associated with adenylate cyclase (Spangler, 1992).

CT enhances antigen presentation by macrophages, epithelial cells and B cells, promotes differentiation and isotype switching in B cells, and has complex inhibitory and stimulatory effects on T-cell proliferation and lymphokine production (Snider, 1995). Some groups report that CT can selectively activate Th2-type CD4+ T cells while inhibiting Th1-type cells (Takahashi *et al.*, 1996,) while others report activation of both TH1 and Th2-type CD4+ T cells (Hornquist and Lycke, 1993). Differences may be due to a number of factors including route of immunization and the nature of the antigen.

The *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (labile toxin, LT) is structurally and functionally closely related to CT, and has similar adjuvant properties (Lycke *et al.*, 1992). LT can confer immunity to co-administered antigens that are on their own non-immunogenic when administered by mucosal routes; this adjuvant effect is noted whether LT is simply mixed with or is physically coupled to the antigen (Holmgren *et al.*, 1993).

While very effective as mucosal adjuvants in animal models, CT and LT are highly toxic, and especially so in humans. Genetically detoxified mutants of both CT and LT have been developed by using site-directed mutagenesis, which, at least in animal models appear to be less toxic yet retain some adjuvanticity (e.g., LTK63 is LT with a single substitution at serine-63) (Rappuoli *et al.*, 1995, Douce *et al.*, 1994, Pizza *et al.*, 1994, De Haan *et al.*, 1996). Nevertheless, the level of adjuvanticity appears to be proportional to the level of retained toxicity, and thus there is a clear need for an alternative safe and effective mucosal adjuvant.

### Summary Of The Invention

The present invention relates to methods and products for inducing immune responses using immunostimulatory CpG dinucleotide containing oligonucleotides. In one aspect the invention is a method for inducing a mucosal immune response. The method includes the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the mucosal immune response, and wherein the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

In another aspect the invention is a method for inducing a mucosal immune response.

- 5 The method includes the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an antigen and a plasmid vector, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides.

- 10 In one embodiment the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector. In another embodiment the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector, which optionally may be the plasmid vector. In yet another embodiment the plasmid vector includes a nucleic acid sequence which operatively encodes for a cytokine. Preferably the antigen and the plasmid vector are administered orally or intranasally. In some embodiments at least 50 $\mu$ g of the  
15 plasmid vector is administered to the subject.

According to another aspect of the invention a method for inducing a mucosal immune response is provided. The method includes the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an antigen and of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and wherein the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector. Preferably the antigen and the oligonucleotide are administered orally or intranasally.

- 25 In some embodiments of the invention the oligonucleotide has a backbone selected from the group consisting of a phosphodiester backbone and a chimeric backbone. In other embodiments the oligonucleotide has a phosphorothioate backbone. In the embodiments wherein the oligonucleotide has a phosphorothioate backbone and wherein the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector and the CpG is an oligonucleotide it is a preferred but not

limited embodiment that the plasmid and oligonucleotides are delivered with a colloidal dispersion system. In some embodiments the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems. In other embodiments the plasmid and oligonucleotide are coated onto gold particles and are delivered with a gene-gun.

A method for inducing a mucosal immune response in a subject is provided in other aspects. The method involves the step of administering to a subject an antigen and an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and administering to the subject a hormone to induce the mucosal immune response.

In one embodiment the antigen and the oligonucleotide are administered to a mucosal surface of the subject. In another embodiment the hormone is administered systemically. In one embodiment the hormone is encoded by a nucleic acid vector.

The invention in other aspects involves methods for inducing an immune response. The method involves the steps of orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

In some embodiments the antigen is administered orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally. In other embodiments the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide. Preferably the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

According to other aspects the invention is a method for inducing an immune response. The method involves the step of orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of a CpG

containing plasmid, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

5 In some embodiments the antigen is administered orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally. In other embodiments the antigen is administered simultaneously with the CpG containing plasmid. Preferably the CpG containing plasmid is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

The methods involve an induction of mucosal immunity. Mucosal immunity can be  
10 induced in a local and/or remote site. In some embodiments the mucosal immunity is induced in a local site and in others the mucosal immunity is induced in a remote site, or both.

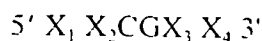
In order to induce a mucosal immune response the CpG oligonucleotide can be administered with a prime dose, a boost dose or both. For instance the CpG oligonucleotide may be administered with a priming dose of antigen. In another embodiment the CpG  
15 oligonucleotide is administered with a boost dose of antigen. In some embodiments the subject is administered a priming dose of antigen and CpG oligonucleotide before the boost dose. In yet other embodiments the subject is administered a boost dose of antigen and CpG oligonucleotide after the priming dose.

In another aspect the invention is a method for inducing a systemic immune response.  
20 The method involves administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a systemic immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and  
25 administering to the mucosal surface of the subject an antigen to induce the systemic immune response. In one embodiment the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector, and wherein the antigen does not produce a systemic immune response when administered to the mucosal surface alone.

According to another aspect of the invention a method for inducing a systemic immune response is provided. The method involves the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a systemic immune response of a combination of a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant and an oligonucleotide, having a  
5 sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject an antigen to induce the systemic immune response.

In one embodiment the antigen is delivered to a mucosal surface. In another  
10 embodiment the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

The subject may be actively exposed to the antigen or passively exposed to the antigen. In one embodiment of the methods described herein the subject is actively exposed to the antigen and the antigen is delivered to a mucosal surface. In other embodiments the antigen is administered concurrently with the oligonucleotide. The antigen may be delivered  
15 alone or in conjunction with a colloidal dispersion system. In some embodiments the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems. Lipid-based systems optionally include oil-in-water emulsions, micelles, mixed micelles, or liposomes.

In other embodiments the subject is passively exposed to the antigen through  
20 environmental contact. The subject that is passively exposed to the antigen in some embodiments is a subject at risk of developing an allergic reaction, an infectious disease, or a cancer. In other embodiments the subject has an infectious disease, a cancer, an allergy or is an asthmatic.

The antigen that is passively or actively administered to the subject is any type of  
25 antigen known in the art and includes for example cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, allergens, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites. In one embodiment the antigen is derived from an infectious organism selected from the group consisting of infectious bacteria, infectious viruses,

infectious parasites, and infectious fungi.

The method may also include the step of administering a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen. Non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvants may include, for example, cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers, and ISCOMS.

In other embodiments the method includes the step of administering a cytokine or a B-7 costimulatory molecule to the subject.

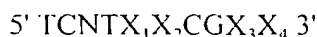
In some embodiments, the oligonucleotide is administered orally, mucosally, ocularly, vaginally, rectally, or by inhalation to a subject.

The oligonucleotide may be modified. For instance, in some embodiments at least one nucleotide has a phosphate backbone modification. The phosphate backbone modification may be a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification. In some embodiments the phosphate backbone modification occurs on the 5' side of the oligonucleotide or the 3' side of the oligonucleotide.

The oligonucleotide may be any size. Preferably the oligonucleotide has 8 to 100 nucleotides. In other embodiments the oligonucleotide is 8 to 40 nucleotides in length.

In some embodiments  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA. Preferably  $X_1X_2$  are GpA or GpT and  $X_3X_4$  are TpT. In other preferred embodiments  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  or both are purines and  $X_3$  or  $X_4$  or both are pyrimidines or  $X_1X_2$  are GpA and  $X_3$  or  $X_4$  or both are pyrimidines. In one embodiment  $X_2$  is a T and  $X_3$  is a pyrimidine. The oligonucleotide may be isolated or synthetic.

In some embodiments the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about 0-25 nucleotides.

In other aspects, the invention encompasses pharmaceutical compositions for orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally administering CpG oligonucleotides or CpG plasmids. In one aspect the composition is an oral formulation of a CpG oligonucleotide in a buffer for neutralizing biological acids. In another aspect the composition is an intranasal formulation of a CpG oligonucleotide in an aerosol. In other aspects the composition is a vaginal or rectal formulation of a CpG oligonucleotide in a suppository or other vehicle suitable for delivery to vaginal and rectal tissue. In other aspect the composition is an ocular formulation of a CpG oligonucleotide in a solution compatible with the eye. Such formulations are described herein as well as in Remingtons Pharmaceutical Sciences, which is hereby incorporated by reference.

Each of the limitations of the invention can encompass various embodiments of the invention. It is, therefore, anticipated that each of the limitations of the invention involving any one element or combinations of elements can be included in each aspect of the invention.

#### Brief Description Of The Drawings

**Figure 1** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on total IgG titers of anti-HBS, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants.

**Figure 2** is a graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on total IgG titers of anti-Hbs, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants and at 8 weeks mice were boosted in the same manner as prime.

**Figure 3** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgG isotype, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants (1  $\mu$ g) and at 8 weeks mice were boosted in the same manner as prime.

**Figure 4** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on HBsAg specific CTL response, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (10  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants at different doses (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) and four weeks after immunization mice were killed by Halothane overdose, splenocytes isolated and HBsAg specific CTL activity measured.

**Figure 5** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in lung washes, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants at different doses (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) and four weeks after immunization (or after boost for group marked by \*) mice were killed by Halothane overdose and lungs were washed with 1ml TBS.

**Figure 6** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in fecal pellet solutions, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) at different doses (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) and four weeks after immunization (or after boost for group marked by \*) mice were isolated for 24 hr and fecal pellets were collected and resuspended in TBS at 0.1 mg/ml.

**Figure 7** is a graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on total IgG titers of anti-HBs, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT), *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LT), the B subunit of Cholera toxin (CTB), a detoxified mutant of *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LTK63), CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) or non-CpG control oligonucleotide (motif #1982, SEQ ID NO. 90) as adjuvants (1, 10 or 500  $\mu$ g). In groups which responded, all mice gave titers > 10, except in the case of 10  $\mu$ g LT where only 1/5 mice responded.

**Figure 8** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies on total IgG



titers of anti-HBs, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90); or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Numbers at the top of each bar represent the IgG<sub>1</sub>/IgG ratio.

**Figure 9** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on HBsAg specific CTL response, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), and 4 weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose, splenocytes isolated and HBsAg specific CTL activity measured.

**Figure 10** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on HBsAg specific T cell proliferation, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), and 4 weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose, splenocytes isolated and HBsAg specific T

cell proliferation measured.

**Figure 11** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in lung washes, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Four weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose and lungs were washed with 1 ml TBS.

**Figure 12** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in saliva, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Four weeks after boost mice were injected with 100 µl 0.5 % Pilocarpine hydrochloride solution and saliva collected.

**Figure 13** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in fecal pellet solutions, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826,

titers of anti-HBs, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. ); or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Numbers at the top of each bar represent the IgG<sub>A</sub>/IgG<sub>I</sub> ratio.

**Figure 9** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on HBsAg specific CTL response, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), and 4 weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose, splenocytes isolated and HBsAg specific CTL activity measured.

**Figure 10** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on HBsAg specific T cell proliferation, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90 ), and 4 weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose, splenocytes isolated and HBsAg specific T

cell proliferation measured.

**Figure 11** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in lung washes, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Four weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose and lungs were washed with 1 ml TBS.

**Figure 12** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in saliva, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Four weeks after boost mice were injected with 100  $\mu$ l 0.5 % Pilocarpine hydrochloride solution and saliva collected.

**Figure 13** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in fecal pellet solutions, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826,

SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Four weeks after boost mice were isolated for 24 hr and fecal pellets were collected and resuspended in TBS at 0.1 mg/ml.

5

### **Brief Description Of The Tables**

**Table 1** lists immunostimulatory oligonucleotide sequences.

10 **Table 2** lists the effect of different adjuvants on HBsAg-specific antibody isotypes.

"BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT), *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LT), the B subunit of Cholera toxin (CTB), a detoxified mutant of *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LTK63) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) (1 or 10 µg) as adjuvants.

15 <sup>a</sup>Values represent the group geometric mean (GMT) of the ELISA end-point dilution titer for HBsAg-specific IgG1 or IgG2a antibodies in plasma taken 4 wk after immunization. Titers were defined as the highest plasma dilution resulting in an absorbance value two times that of non-immune plasma, with a cut-off value of 0.05.

<sup>c</sup>The IgG2a to IgG1 ratios (IgG2a:IgG1) are reported, with a value >1 indicating a predominantly  
20 Th-1 like response.

<sup>d</sup>N/A: Not applicable since no antibody responses detected.

<sup>e</sup>=: All mice immunized with these adjuvant combinations died within 96 hours.

**Table 3** lists the effect of different adjuvants on HBsAg-specific IgA responses.

25 "BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT), *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LT), the B subunit of Cholera toxin (CTB), a detoxified mutant of *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LTK63) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) (1 or 10 µg) as adjuvants. All groups contained 5 mice unless otherwise indicated.

30 <sup>b</sup>Values represent the geometric mean titers ± the standard error of the mean (GMT ± SEM) of

the ELISA end-point dilution titer for HBsAg-specific IgA antibodies in lung wash or fecal solutions taken 4 wk after immunization.

IgA titers in lung washes were defined as the highest dilution that resulted in an absorbance value (OD 450) two times greater than that of non-immune lung wash, with a cut-off value of 0.05.

5 IgA titers in fecal extracts were expressed as OD 450  $\times 10^3$  above background (non-immune fecal extract). Seroconversion was defined as an endpoint titer for total IgG  $> 100$ .

"=: All mice immunized with these adjuvant combinations died within 96 hours.

10 **Table 4** shows the different mucosal/parenteral prime boost/strategies used to immunize BALB/c mice and summarizes the results as to which approach induced antigen-specific systemic and mucosal immune responses.

#### **Detailed Description Of The Invention**

15 The invention relates to methods and products for inducing immunity using immunostimulatory CpG oligonucleotides. One aspect of the invention is based on the finding that CpG oligonucleotides act as a potent mucosal adjuvants to induce immune responses at both local and remote sites against an antigen administered to the mucosal tissue. This finding is striking even in view of previous findings that CpG oligonucleotide is a potent adjuvant for systemic delivery, because with systemic delivery the protein alone induces detectable immune responses but with mucosal delivery the protein alone does not induce an immune response. As demonstrated in the Examples below, both systemic and mucosal immunity are induced by mucosal delivery of CpG oligonucleotides. The systemic immunity induced in response to CpG oligonucleotides included both humoral and cell-mediated responses to specific antigens that were not capable of inducing systemic immunity when administered alone to the mucosa.

20

25 Furthermore, both CpG oligonucleotides and cholera toxin (CT, a mucosal adjuvant that induces a Th2-like response) induced CTL. This is surprising since with systemic immunization, the presence of Th2-like antibodies is normally associated with a lack of CTL (Schirmbeck *et al.*, 1995).

Additionally, CpG oligonucleotides were found to induce a mucosal response at both local

(e.g., lung) and remote (e.g., lower digestive tract) mucosal sites. Although CpG oligonucleotide was similar to CT for induction of systemic antibodies (IgG) and local mucosal antibodies (IgA), significant levels of IgA antibodies were induced at a distant mucosal site only by CpG oligonucleotide and not by CT. This was surprising because CT is generally considered to be a highly effective mucosal adjuvant. Another manner in which CpG oligonucleotide was superior to CT was with respect to the Th-type of response. As has been previously reported (Snider 1995), CT induces predominantly IgG1 isotype of antibodies, which are indicative of Th2-type response. In contrast, CpG oligonucleotide was more Th1 with predominantly IgG2a antibodies, especially after boost or when the two adjuvants were combined. Th1-type antibodies in general have better neutralizing capabilities, and furthermore, a Th2 response in the lung is highly undesirable because it is associated with asthma (Kay, 1996, Hogg, 1997). Thus the use of CpG oligonucleotide as a mucosal adjuvant has benefits that other mucosal adjuvants cannot achieve.

The discovery of CpG oligonucleotide as a safe and effective mucosal adjuvant is also advantageous because although CT is a highly effective mucosal adjuvant, it is too toxic for use in humans. A mouse (~20 g body weight) can tolerate the toxic effects of up to 10 µg of CT, however a dose as little as 1-5 µg will cause severe diarrhea in a human (~70 kg body weight) (Jertborn *et al.*, 1992). Animals inhaling CpG oligonucleotide showed no short-term signs of distress over those receiving HBsAg alone, and all recovered quickly with no apparent long-lasting effects. CpG oligonucleotide is well tolerated at very high doses (e.g., greater than 100 µg), when delivered systemically or mucosally.

Thus in one aspect the invention is a method for inducing a mucosal immune response in a subject. The method includes the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the mucosal immune response. In other aspects the method involves administering a plasmid vector, having a sequence including at least the above formula instead of the oligonucleotide. The oligonucleotide, referred to herein as the oligonucleotide or the CpG oligonucleotide, is not a plasmid vector. These distinctions are made clear in the

definitions set forth below. For purposes of brevity, the invention is described herein with respect to CpG oligonucleotides, but the description also applies to plasmid vectors.

The CpG oligonucleotide is particularly useful as a prophylactic vaccine for the induction of mucosal immunity of a subject at risk of developing an infection with an infectious organism or a subject at risk of developing an allergy or cancer. A "subject at risk" as used herein is a subject who has any risk of exposure to an infection causing infectious pathogen or an allergen or of developing cancer. For instance, a subject at risk may be a subject who is planning to travel to an area where a particular type of infectious agent or allergen is found or it may be a subject who through lifestyle or medical procedures is exposed to bodily fluids which may contain infectious organisms or even any subject living in an area that an infectious organism or an allergen has been identified. Subjects at risk of developing infection also include general populations to which a medical agency recommends vaccination with a particular infectious organism antigen. If the antigen is an allergen and the subject develops allergic responses to that particular antigen and the subject is exposed to the antigen, i.e., during pollen season, then that subject is at risk of exposure to the antigen. Subjects at risk of developing cancer include those with a genetic predisposition or previously treated for cancer, and those exposed to carcinogens such as tobacco, asbestos, and other chemical toxins or excessive sunlight and other types of radiation.

In addition to the use of the CpG oligonucleotide for prophylactic treatment, the invention also encompasses the use of the CpG oligonucleotide for the treatment of a subject having an infection, an allergy or a cancer.

A "subject having an infection" is a subject that has been exposed to an infectious pathogen and has acute or chronic detectable levels of the pathogen in the body. The CpG oligonucleotide can be used with an antigen to mount an antigen specific mucosal immune response that is capable of reducing the level of or eradicating the infectious pathogen. An infectious disease, as used herein, is a disease arising from the presence of a foreign microorganism in the body. It is particularly important to develop effective vaccine strategies and treatments to protect the body's mucosal surfaces, which are the primary site of pathogenic entry.

A "subject having an allergy" is a subject that has or is at risk of developing an allergic reaction in response to an allergen. An "allergy" refers to acquired hypersensitivity to a substance



(allergen). Allergic conditions include but are not limited to eczema, allergic rhinitis or coryza, hay fever, conjunctivitis, bronchial asthma, urticaria (hives) and food allergies, and other atopic conditions.

Currently, allergic diseases are generally treated by the injection of small doses of antigen followed by subsequent increasing dosage of antigen. It is believed that this procedure induces tolerization to the allergen to prevent further allergic reactions. These methods, however, can take several years to be effective and are associated with the risk of side effects such as anaphylactic shock. The methods of the invention avoid these problems.

Allergies are generally caused by IgE antibody generation against harmless allergens. The cytokines that are induced by mucosal administration of unmethylated CpG oligonucleotides are predominantly of a class called "Th1" (examples are IL-12 and IFN- $\gamma$ ) and these induce both humoral and cellular immune responses. The types of antibodies associated with a Th1 response are generally more protective because they have high neutralization and opsonization capabilities. The other major type of immune response, which is associated with the production of IL-4, IL-5 and IL-10 cytokines, is termed as Th2 immune response. Th2 responses involve solely antibodies and these have less protective effect against infection and some Th2 isotypes (e.g., IgE) are associated with allergy. In general, it appears that allergic diseases are mediated by Th2 type immune responses while Th1 responses provide the best protection against infection, although excessive Th1 responses are associated with autoimmune disease. Based on the ability of the CpG oligonucleotides to shift the immune response in a subject from a Th2 (which is associated with production of IgE antibodies and allergy) to a Th1 response (which is protective against allergic reactions), an effective dose for inducing a mucosal immune response of a CpG oligonucleotide can be administered to a subject to treat or prevent an allergy.

Thus, the CpG oligonucleotide has significant therapeutic utility in the treatment of allergic conditions such as asthma. Th2 cytokines, especially IL-4 and IL-5 are elevated in the airways of asthmatic subjects. These cytokines promote important aspects of the asthmatic inflammatory response, including IgE isotope switching, eosinophil chemotaxis and activation and mast cell growth. Th1 cytokines, especially IFN- $\gamma$  and IL-12, can suppress the formation of Th2 clones and production of Th2 cytokines. "Asthma" refers to a disorder of the respiratory system characterized by inflammation, narrowing of the airways and increased reactivity of the

airways to inhaled agents. Asthma is frequently, although not exclusively associated with atopic or allergic symptoms.

A "subject having a cancer" is a subject that has detectable cancerous cells. The cancer may be a malignant or non-malignant cancer. Cancers or tumors include but are not limited to biliary tract cancer; brain cancer; breast cancer; cervical cancer; choriocarcinoma; colon cancer; endometrial cancer; esophageal cancer; gastric cancer; intraepithelial neoplasms; lymphomas; liver cancer; lung cancer (e.g. small cell and non-small cell); melanoma; neuroblastomas; oral cancer; ovarian cancer; pancreas cancer; prostate cancer; rectal cancer; sarcomas; skin cancer; testicular cancer; thyroid cancer; and renal cancer, as well as other carcinomas and sarcomas.

A "subject" shall mean a human or vertebrate animal including but not limited to a dog, cat, horse, cow, pig, sheep, goat, chicken, primate, e.g., monkey, fish (aquaculture species), e.g. salmon, rat, and mouse.

A CpG oligonucleotide is an oligonucleotide which includes at least one unmethylated CpG dinucleotide. An oligonucleotide containing at least one unmethylated CpG dinucleotide is a nucleic acid molecule which contains an unmethylated cytosine-guanine dinucleotide sequence (i.e. "CpG DNA" or DNA containing a 5' cytosine followed by 3' guanosine and linked by a phosphate bond) and activates the immune system. The CpG oligonucleotides can be double-stranded or single-stranded. Generally, double-stranded molecules are more stable *in vivo*, while single-stranded molecules have increased immune activity.

The terms "nucleic acid" and "oligonucleotide" are used interchangeably to mean multiple nucleotides (i.e. molecules comprising a sugar (e.g. ribose or deoxyribose) linked to a phosphate group and to an exchangeable organic base, which is either a substituted pyrimidine (e.g. cytosine (C), thymine (T) or uracil (U)) or a substituted purine (e.g. adenine (A) or guanine (G)). As used herein, the terms refer to oligoribonucleotides as well as oligodeoxyribonucleotides. The terms shall also include polynucleosides (i.e. a polynucleotide minus the phosphate) and any other organic base containing polymer. Nucleic acid molecules can be obtained from existing nucleic acid sources (e.g. genomic or cDNA), but are preferably synthetic (e.g. produced by oligonucleotide synthesis). The entire CpG oligonucleotide can be unmethylated or portions may be unmethylated but at least the C of the 5' CG 3' must be unmethylated.

The methods of the invention may be accomplished by administering a CpG containing

oligonucleotide or a CpG containing plasmid vector to the subject to induce a mucosal immune response. As used herein the terms a "CpG oligonucleotide" and a "plasmid expression vector" are mutually exclusive. The terms "CpG oligonucleotide" or "CpG nucleic acid" are used to refer to any CpG containing nucleic acid except for a CpG containing plasmid vector. A plasmid expression vector is a nucleic acid molecule which includes at least a promoter and a gene encoding a peptide or peptide fragment. The plasmid expression vector includes a nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide which is operatively linked to a gene expression sequence which directs the expression of the peptide within a eukaryotic cell. The "gene expression sequence" is any regulatory nucleotide sequence, such as a promoter sequence or promoter-enhancer combination, which facilitates the efficient transcription and translation of the peptide to which it is operatively linked. The gene expression sequence may, for example, be a mammalian or viral promoter, such as a constitutive or inducible promoter. Such constructs are well known to those of skill in the art.

In one preferred embodiment the invention provides a CpG oligonucleotide represented by at least the formula:



wherein at least one nucleotide separates consecutive CpGs;  $X_1$  is adenine, guanine, or thymine;  $X_2$  is cytosine, adenine, or thymine; N is any nucleotide and  $N_1$  and  $N_2$  are nucleic acid sequences composed of from about 0-25 N's each.

In another embodiment the invention provides an isolated CpG oligonucleotide represented by at least the formula:



wherein at least one nucleotide separates consecutive CpGs;  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA; N is any nucleotide and  $N_1$  and  $N_2$  are nucleic acid sequences composed of from about 0-25 N's each. Preferably  $X_1X_2$  are GpA or GpT and  $X_3X_4$  are TpT. In other preferred embodiments  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  or both are purines and  $X_3$  or  $X_4$  or both are pyrimidines or  $X_1X_2$  are GpA and  $X_3$  or  $X_4$  or both are pyrimidines. In a

preferred embodiment  $N_1$  and  $N_2$  of the nucleic acid do not contain a CCGG or CGCG quadmer or more than one CCG or CGG trimer. The effect of a CCGG or CGCG quadmer or more than one CCG or CGG trimer depends in part on the status of the oligonucleotide backbone. For instance, if the oligonucleotide has a phosphodiester backbone or a chimeric backbone the inclusion of these sequences in the oligonucleotide will only have minimal if any affect on the biological activity of the oligonucleotide. If the backbone is completely phosphorothioate or significantly phosphorothioate then the inclusion of these sequences may have more influence on the biological activity or the kinetics of the biological activity. In the case when the CpG oligonucleotide is administered in conjunction with an antigen which is encoded in a nucleic acid vector, it is preferred that the backbone of the CpG oligonucleotide be phosphodiester or chimeric. It can be completely phosphorothioate if the oligonucleotide is delivered directly to the cell. The cell may have a problem taking up a completely phosphorothioate oligonucleotide in the presence of a plasmid vector. Thus when both a vector and an oligonucleotide are delivered to a subject, it is preferred that the oligonucleotide have a phosphodiester or chimeric backbone or have a phosphorothioate backbone but be associated with a vehicle that delivers it directly into the cell. Such vehicles are known in the art and include, for example, liposomes and gene guns.

In another preferred embodiment the CpG oligonucleotide has the sequence 5'TCN<sub>1</sub>TX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>CGX<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>3'.

Preferably the CpG oligonucleotides of the invention include X<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub> selected from the group consisting of GpT, GpG, GpA and ApA and X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub> is selected from the group consisting of TpT, CpT and TpC. For facilitating uptake into cells, CpG containing oligonucleotides are preferably in the range of 8 to 30 bases in length. However, nucleic acids of any size greater than 8 nucleotides (even many kb long) are capable of inducing an immune response according to the invention if sufficient immunostimulatory motifs are present, since larger nucleic acids are degraded into oligonucleotides inside of cells. Preferred synthetic oligonucleotides do not include a CCGG or CGCG quadmer or more than one CCG or CGG trimer at or near the 5' and/or 3' terminals. Stabilized oligonucleotides, where the oligonucleotide incorporates a phosphate backbone modification, as discussed in more detail below are also preferred. The modification may be, for example, a phosphorothioate or

phosphorodithioate modification. Preferably, the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the nucleic acid for example, at the first two nucleotides of the 5' end of the oligonucleotide. Further, the phosphate backbone modification may occur at the 3' end of the nucleic acid for example, at the last five nucleotides of the 3' end of the nucleic acid.

5 Alternatively the oligonucleotide may be completely or partially modified.

Preferably the CpG oligonucleotide is in the range of between 8 and 100 and more preferably between 8 and 30 nucleotides in size. Alternatively, CpG oligonucleotides can be produced on a large scale in plasmids and degraded into oligonucleotides.

The CpG oligonucleotide may be directly administered to the subject or may be  
10 administered in conjunction with a nucleic acid delivery complex. A "nucleic acid delivery complex" shall mean a nucleic acid molecule associated with (e.g. ionically or covalently bound to; or encapsulated within) a targeting means (e.g. a molecule that results in higher affinity binding to target cell (e.g. dendritic cell surfaces and/or increased cellular uptake by target cells). Examples of nucleic acid delivery complexes include nucleic acids associated  
15 with: a sterol (e.g. cholesterol), a lipid (e.g. a cationic lipid, virosome or liposome), or a target cell specific binding agent (e.g. a ligand recognized by target cell specific receptor). Preferred complexes may be sufficiently stable *in vivo* to prevent significant uncoupling prior to internalization by the target cell. However, the complex can be cleavable under appropriate conditions within the cell so that the nucleic acid is released in a functional form.

20 Delivery vehicles for delivering antigen to mucosal surfaces have been described. The CpG oligonucleotide and/or the antigen may be administered alone (e.g. in saline or buffer) or using any delivery vehicles known in the art. For instance the following delivery vehicles have been described: Cochleates (Gould-Fogerite et al., 1994, 1996); Emulsomes (Vancott et al., 1998, Lowell et al., 1997); ISCOMs (Mowat et al., 1993, Carlsson et al., 1991, Hu et al.,  
25 1998, Morein et al., 1999); Liposomes (Childers et al., 1999, Michalek et al., 1989, 1992, de Haan 1995a, 1995b); Live bacterial vectors (e.g., *Salmonella*, *Escherichia coli*, *Bacillus calmatte-guerin*, *Shigella*, *Lactobacillus*) (Hone et al., 1996, Pouwels et al., 1998, Chatfield et al., 1993, Stover et al., 1991, Nugent et al., 1998); Live viral vectors (e.g., Vaccinia, adenovirus, Herpes Simplex) (Gallichan et al., 1993, 1995, Moss et al., 1996, Nugent et al.,  
30 1998, Flexner et al., 1988, Morrow et al., 1999); Microspheres (Gupta et al., 1998, Jones et

al., 1996. Maloy et al., 1994, Moore et al., 1995, O'Hagan et al., 1994, Eldridge et al., 1989); Nucleic acid vaccines (Fynan et al., 1993, Kuklin et al., 1997, Sasaki et al., 1998, Okada et al., 1997, Ishii et al., 1997); Polymers (e.g. carboxymethylcellulose, chitosan) (Hamajima et al., 1998, Jabbal-Gill et al., 1998); Polymer rings (Wyatt et al., 1998); Proteosomes (Vancott et al., 1998, Lowell et al., 1988, 1996, 1997); Sodium Fluoride (Hashi et al., 1998); Transgenic plants (Tacket et al., 1998, Mason et al., 1998, Haq et al., 1995); Virosomes (Gluck et al., 1992, Mengiardi et al., 1995, Cryz et al., 1998); Virus-like particles (Jiang et al., 1999, Leibl et al., 1998). Other delivery vehicles are known in the art and some additional examples are provided below in the discussion of vectors.

“Palindromic sequence” shall mean an inverted repeat (i.e. a sequence such as ABCDEE'D'C'B'A' in which A and A' are bases capable of forming the usual Watson-Crick base pairs. *In vivo*, such sequences may form double-stranded structures. In one embodiment the CpG oligonucleotide contains a palindromic sequence. A palindromic sequence used in this context refers to a palindrome in which the CpG is part of the palindrome, and preferably is the center of the palindrome. In another embodiment the CpG oligonucleotide is free of a palindrome. A CpG oligonucleotide that is free of a palindrome is one in which the CpG dinucleotide is not part of a palindrome. Such an oligonucleotide may include a palindrome in which the CpG is not part of the palindrome.

A “stabilized nucleic acid molecule” shall mean a nucleic acid molecule that is relatively resistant to *in vivo* degradation (e.g. via an exo- or endo-nuclease). Stabilization can be a function of length or secondary structure. Unmethylated CpG oligonucleotides that are tens to hundreds of kbs long are relatively resistant to *in vivo* degradation. For shorter CpG oligonucleotides, secondary structure can stabilize and increase their effect. For example, if the 3' end of an oligonucleotide has self-complementarity to an upstream region, so that it can fold back and form a sort of stem loop structure, then the oligonucleotide becomes stabilized and therefore exhibits more activity.

Preferred stabilized oligonucleotides of the instant invention have a modified backbone. It has been demonstrated that modification of the oligonucleotide backbone provides enhanced activity of the CpG oligonucleotides when administered *in vivo*. CpG constructs, including at least two phosphorothioate linkages at the 5' end of the

oligonucleotide in multiple phosphorothioate linkages at the 3' end, preferably 5, provides maximal activity and protected the oligonucleotide from degradation by intracellular exo- and endo-nucleases. Other modified oligonucleotides include phosphodiester modified oligonucleotide, combinations of phosphodiester and phosphorothioate oligonucleotide, methylphosphonate, methylphosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, and combinations thereof. Each of these combinations and their particular effects on immune cells is discussed in more detail in PCT Published Patent Applications claiming priority to U.S. Serial Nos. 08/738,652 and 08/960,774, filed on October 30, 1996 and October 30, 1997 respectively, the entire contents of which is hereby incorporated by reference. It is believed that these modified oligonucleotides may show more stimulatory activity due to enhanced nuclease resistance, increased cellular uptake, increased protein binding, and/or altered intracellular localization.

Both phosphorothioate and phosphodiester oligonucleotides containing CpG motifs are active in immune cells. However, based on the concentration needed to induce CpG specific effects, the nuclease resistant phosphorothioate backbone CpG oligonucleotides are more potent (2  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  for the phosphorothioate vs. a total of 90  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  for phosphodiester).

Other stabilized oligonucleotides include: nonionic DNA analogs, such as alkyl- and aryl-phosphates (in which the charged phosphonate oxygen is replaced by an alkyl or aryl group), phosphodiester and alkylphosphotriesters, in which the charged oxygen moiety is alkylated. Oligonucleotides which contain diol, such as tetraethyleneglycol or hexaethyleneglycol, at either or both termini have also been shown to be substantially resistant to nuclease degradation.

The nucleic acid sequences of the invention which are useful as mucosal adjuvants are those broadly described above and disclosed in PCT Published Patent Applications claiming priority to U.S. Serial Nos. 08/738,652 and 08/960,774, filed on October 30, 1996 and October 30, 1997 respectively. Exemplary sequences include but are not limited to those immunostimulatory sequences shown in Table 1.

**Table 1 -sequences**

GCTAGACGTTAGCGT:	(SEQ ID NO: 1)
GCTAGATGTTAGCGT:	(SEQ ID NO: 2)
GCTAGACGTTAGCGT:	(SEQ ID NO: 3)

	GCTAGACGTTAGCGT;	(SEQ ID NO: 4)
	GCATGACGTTGAGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 5)
	ATGGAAGGTCCAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 6)
	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 7)
5	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 8)
	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 9)
	ATGGAAGGTCCAACGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 10)
	GAGAACGCTGGACCTTCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 11)
	GAGAACGCTCGACCTTCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 12)
10	GAGAACGCTCGACCTTCGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 13)
	GAGAACGCTGGACCTTCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 14)
	GAGAACGATGGACCTTCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 15)
	GAGAACGCTCCAGCACTGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 16)
	TCCATGTTCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 17)
15	TCCATGTTCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 18)
	TCCATGACGTTCCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 19)
	TCCATGTTCGGTCCTGCTGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 20)
	TCAACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 21)
	TCAGCGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 22)
20	TCATCGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 23)
	TCTTCGAA;	(SEQ ID NO: 24)
	CAACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 25)
	CCAACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 26)
	AACGTTCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 27)
25	TCAACGTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 28)
	ATGGACTCTCCAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 29)
	ATGGAAGGTCCAACGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 30)
	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 31)
	ATGGAGGCTCCATCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 32)
30	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 33)
	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 34)
	TCCATGTTCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 35)
	TCCATGCCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 36)
	TCCATGGCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 37)
35	TCCATGACGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 38)
	TCCATGTTCGATCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 39)
	TCCATGTTCGCTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 40)
	TCCATGTTCGTCCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 41)
	TCCATGACGTGCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 42)
40	TCCATAACGTTCCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 43)
	TCCATGACGTCCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 44)
	TCCATCACGTGCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 45)
	GGGGTCAACGTTGACGGGG;	(SEQ ID NO: 46)
	GGGGTCAGTCGTGACGGGG;	(SEQ ID NO: 47)
45	GCTAGACGTTAGTGT;	(SEQ ID NO: 48)



	TCCATGTCGTTCCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 49)
	ACCATGGACGATCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 50)
	TCTCCCAGCGTGCGCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 51)
	ACCATGGACGAACTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 52)
5	ACCATGGACGAGCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 53)
	ACCATGGACGACCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 54)
	ACCATGGACGTA CTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 55)
	ACCATGGACGGTCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 56)
	ACCATGGACGTTCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 57)
10	CACGTTGAGGGGCGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 58)
	TCAGCGTGCGCC;	(SEQ ID NO: 59)
	ATGACGTTCCCTGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 60)
	TCTCCCAGCGGGGCGCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 61)
	TCCATGTCGTTCCCTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 62)
15	TCCATAGCGTTCCTAGCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 63)
	TCGTCGCTGTCTCCCCTTCTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 64)
	TCCTGACGTTCCCTGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 65)
	TCCTGTCGTTCCCTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 66)
	TCCATGTCGTTTTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 67)
20	TCCTGTCGTTCCCTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 68)
	TCCTTGTCTGTTCCCTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 69)
	TCCTGTCGTTTTTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 70)
	TCGTCGCTGTCTGCCCTTCTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 71)
	TCGTCGCTGTTGTCTGTTTCTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 72)
25	TCCATGCGTGCGTGCGTTTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 73)
	TCCATGCGTTGCGTTGCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 74)
	TCCACGACGTTTTTCGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 75)
	TCGTCGTTGTCTGTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 76)
	TCGTCGTTTTGTCTGTTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 77)
30	TCGTCGTTGTCTGTTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 78)
	GCGTGCGTTGTCTGTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 79)
	TGTCGTTTGTCTGTTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 80)
	TGTCGTTGTCTGTTGTCTGTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 81)
	TGTCGTTGTCTGTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 82)
35	TCGTCGTCGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 83)
	TGTCGTTGTCTGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 84)
	TCCATAGCGTTCCTAGCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 85)
	TCCATGACGTTCCCTGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 86)
	GTCGYT;	(SEQ ID NO: 87)
40	TGTCGYT;	(SEQ ID NO: 88)
	AGCTATGACGTTCCAAGG;	(SEQ ID NO: 89)
	TCCATGACGTTCCCTGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 90)
	ATCGACTCTCGAACGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 92)
	TCCATGTCGGTCCCTGACGCA;	(SEQ ID NO: 93)
45	TCTTCGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 94)
	ATAGGAGGTCCAACGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 95)

The stimulation index of a particular immunostimulatory CpG DNA can be tested in various immune cell assays. Preferably, the stimulation index of the CpG oligonucleotide with regard to B cell proliferation is at least about 5, preferably at least about 10, more preferably at least about 15 and most preferably at least about 20 as determined by  
5 incorporation of  $^3\text{H}$  uridine in a murine B cell culture, which has been contacted with 20  $\mu\text{M}$  of oligonucleotide for 20h at 37°C and has been pulsed with 1  $\mu\text{Ci}$  of  $^3\text{H}$  uridine; and harvested and counted 4h later as described in detail in PCT Published Patent Applications claiming priority to U.S. Serial Nos. 08/738,652 and 08/960,774, filed on October 30, 1996 and October 30, 1997 respectively. For use *in vivo*, for example, it is important that the CpG  
10 oligonucleotide be capable of effectively inducing IgA expression.

The CpG oligonucleotide can be administered in conjunction with another mucosal adjuvant. It was discovered according to the invention that the combination of a CpG oligonucleotide and a mucosal adjuvant produced a synergistic immune response. When the CpG oligonucleotide is administered in conjunction with another adjuvant, the CpG  
15 oligonucleotide can be administered before, after, and/or simultaneously with the other mucosal adjuvant. For instance, the CpG oligonucleotide may be administered with a priming dose of antigen. Either or both of the adjuvants may then be administered with the boost dose. Alternatively, the CpG oligonucleotide may be administered with a boost dose of antigen. Either or both of the adjuvants may then be administered with the prime dose.

20 Additionally it has been discovered that mucosal immunity can be induced as long as one of the dosages of CpG oligonucleotide is administered to a mucosal surface. Other doses can be administered systemically or mucosally without affecting the induction of the immune response. For example, the subject may be primed by mucosal delivery of antigen and CpG oligonucleotide, with or without other mucosal adjuvants and boosted by a parenteral (e.g.,  
25 intramuscular, intradermal or subcutaneous) route of delivery of antigen alone, with CpG oligonucleotides, with a non-oligonucleotide adjuvant or a combination of adjuvants that may or may not include CpG oligonucleotide. Alternatively, the prime dose may be given parenterally and boosted mucosally using the invention. All of these approaches can induce strong systemic and mucosal immune responses. Thus the methods of the invention  
30 encompass the administration of at least one dose, either prime or boost or both, to the

mucosal surface. The other doses of CpG oligonucleotide may be administered mucosally or systemically.

A "prime dose" is the first dose of antigen administered to the subject. In the case of a subject that has an infection the prime dose may be the initial exposure of the subject to the infectious microbe (passive exposure) and thus the subsequent purposeful administration of antigen (active exposure) with CpG oligonucleotide becomes the boost dose. A "boost dose" is a second or third, etc. dose of antigen administered to a subject that has already been exposed to the antigen. In some cases the prime dose administered with the CpG oligonucleotide is so effective that a boost dose is not required to protect a subject at risk of infection from being infected.

The subject is exposed to the antigen. As used herein, the term "exposed to" refers to either the active step of contacting the subject with an antigen or the passive exposure of the subject to the antigen *in vivo*. Methods for the active exposure of a subject to an antigen are well-known in the art. In general, an antigen is administered directly to the subject by any means such as intravenous, intramuscular, oral, transdermal, mucosal, intranasal, intratracheal, or subcutaneous administration. The antigen can be administered systemically or locally. Methods for administering the antigen and the CpG oligonucleotide are described in more detail below. A subject is passively exposed to an antigen if an antigen becomes available for exposure to the immune cells in the body. A subject may be passively exposed to an antigen, for instance, by entry of a foreign pathogen into the body or by the development of a tumor cell expressing a foreign antigen on its surface. When a subject is passively exposed to an antigen it is preferred in some embodiments that the CpG oligonucleotide is an oligonucleotide of 8-100 nucleotides in length and/or has a phosphate modified backbone.

The methods in which a subject is passively exposed to an antigen can be particularly dependent on timing of CpG oligonucleotide. For instance, in a subject at risk of developing a cancer or an infectious disease or an allergic or asthmatic response, the subject may be administered the CpG oligonucleotide on a regular basis when that risk is greatest, i.e., during allergy season or after exposure to a cancer causing agent. Additionally the CpG oligonucleotide may be administered to travelers before they travel to foreign lands where they are at risk of exposure to infectious agents. Likewise the CpG oligonucleotide and may

be administered to soldiers or civilians at risk of exposure to biowarfare to induce a mucosal immune response to the antigen when and if the subject is exposed to it.

An "antigen" as used herein is a molecule capable of provoking an immune response. Antigens include but are not limited to cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites and allergens. The term antigen broadly includes any type of molecule which is recognized by a host immune system as being foreign. Antigens include but are not limited to cancer antigens, microbial antigens, and allergens.

A "cancer antigen" as used herein is a compound, such as a peptide or protein, associated with a tumor or cancer cell surface and which is capable of provoking an immune response when expressed on the surface of an antigen presenting cell in the context of an MHC molecule. Cancer antigens can be prepared from cancer cells either by preparing crude extracts of cancer cells, for example, as described in Cohen, et al., 1994, *Cancer Research*, 54:1055, by partially purifying the antigens, by recombinant technology, or by de novo synthesis of known antigens. Cancer antigens include antigens that are recombinantly an immunogenic portion of or a whole tumor or cancer. Such antigens can be isolated or prepared recombinantly or by any other means known in the art.

A "microbial antigen" as used herein is an antigen of a microorganism and includes but is not limited to infectious virus, infectious bacteria, infectious parasites, and infectious fungi. Such antigens include the intact microorganism as well as natural isolates and fragments or derivatives thereof and also synthetic compounds which are identical to or similar to natural microorganism antigens and induce an immune response specific for that microorganism. A compound is similar to a natural microorganism antigen if it induces an immune response (humoral and/or cellular) to a natural microorganism antigen. Such antigens are used routinely in the art and are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

Examples of infectious virus that have been found in humans include but are not limited to: *Retroviridae* (e.g. human immunodeficiency viruses, such as HIV-1 (also referred to as HTLV-III, LAV or HTLV-III/LAV, or HIV-III; and other isolates, such as HIV-LP; *Picornaviridae* (e.g. polio viruses, hepatitis A virus; enteroviruses, human Coxsackie viruses,

rhinoviruses, echoviruses); *Calciviridae* (e.g. strains that cause gastroenteritis); *Togaviridae* (e.g. equine encephalitis viruses, rubella viruses); *Flaviridae* (e.g. dengue viruses, encephalitis viruses, yellow fever viruses); *Coronaviridae* (e.g. coronaviruses); *Rhabdoviridae* (e.g. vesicular stomatitis viruses, rabies viruses); *Coronaviridae* (e.g. coronaviruses);

5 *Rhabdoviridae* (e.g. vesicular stomatitis viruses, rabies viruses); *Filoviridae* (e.g. ebola viruses); *Paramyxoviridae* (e.g. parainfluenza viruses, mumps virus, measles virus, respiratory syncytial virus); *Orthomyxoviridae* (e.g. influenza viruses); *Bunyaviridae* (e.g. Hantaan viruses, bunya viruses, phleboviruses and Nairo viruses); *Arenaviridae* (hemorrhagic fever viruses); *Reoviridae* (e.g. reoviruses, orbiviruses and rotaviruses); *Birnaviridae*;

10 *Hepadnaviridae* (Hepatitis B virus); *Parvoviridae* (parvoviruses); *Papovaviridae* (papilloma viruses, polyoma viruses); *Adenoviridae* (most adenoviruses); *Herpesviridae* (herpes simplex virus (HSV) 1 and 2, varicella zoster virus, cytomegalovirus (CMV), herpes virus); *Poxviridae* (variola viruses, vaccinia viruses, pox viruses); and *Iridoviridae* (e.g. African swine fever virus); and unclassified viruses (e.g. the etiological agents of Spongiform encephalopathies,

15 the agent of delta hepatitis (thought to be a defective satellite of hepatitis B virus), the agents of non-A, non-B hepatitis (class 1 = internally transmitted; class 2 = parenterally transmitted (i.e. Hepatitis C); Norwalk and related viruses, and astroviruses).

Both gram negative and gram positive bacteria serve as antigens in vertebrate animals. Such gram positive bacteria include, but are not limited to *Pasteurella* species, *Staphylococci*

20 species, and *Streptococcus* species. Gram negative bacteria include, but are not limited to, *Escherichia coli*, *Pseudomonas* species, and *Salmonella* species. Specific examples of infectious bacteria include but are not limited to: *Helicobacter pylori*, *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *Legionella pneumophila*, *Mycobacteria* sps (e.g. *M. tuberculosis*, *M. avium*, *M. intracellulare*, *M. kansasii*, *M. goodii*), *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*,

25 *Neisseria meningitidis*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Group A Streptococcus), *Streptococcus agalactiae* (Group B Streptococcus), *Streptococcus* (viridans group), *Streptococcus faecalis*, *Streptococcus bovis*, *Streptococcus* (anaerobic sps.), *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, pathogenic *Campylobacter* sp., *Enterococcus* sp., *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Bacillus anthracis*, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, *Corynebacterium* sp.,

30 *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, *Clostridium perfringens*, *Clostridium tetani*, *Enterobacter*

*aerogenes*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Pasturella multocida*, *Bacteroides sp.*, *Fusobacterium nucleatum*, *Streptobacillus moniliformis*, *Treponema pallidum*, *Treponema pertenue*, *Leptospira*, *Rickettsia*, and *Actinomyces israeli*.

Examples of infectious fungi include: *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Coccidioides immitis*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Candida albicans*. Other infectious organisms (i.e., protists) include: *Plasmodium* such as *Plasmodium falciparum*, *Plasmodium malariae*, *Plasmodium ovale*, and *Plasmodium vivax* and *Toxoplasma gondii*.

Other medically relevant microorganisms have been described extensively in the literature, e.g., see C.G.A Thomas, *Medical Microbiology*, Bailliere Tindall, Great Britain 1983, the entire contents of which is hereby incorporated by reference.

Although many of the microbial antigens described above relate to human disorders, the invention is also useful for treating other nonhuman vertebrates. Nonhuman vertebrates are also capable of developing infections which can be prevented or treated with the CpG oligonucleotides disclosed herein. For instance, in addition to the treatment of infectious human diseases, the methods of the invention are useful for treating infections of animals.

As used herein, the term "treat", "treated", or "treating" when used with respect to an infectious disease refers to a prophylactic treatment which increases the resistance of a subject (a subject at risk of infection) to infection with a pathogen or, in other words, decreases the likelihood that the subject will become infected with the pathogen as well as a treatment after the subject (a subject who has been infected) has become infected in order to fight the infection, e.g., reduce or eliminate the infection or prevent it from becoming worse.

Many vaccines for the treatment of non-human vertebrates are disclosed in Bennett, K. *Compendium of Veterinary Products*, 3rd ed. North American Compendiums, Inc., 1995. As discussed above, antigens include infectious microbes such as virus, bacteria and fungi and fragments thereof, derived from natural sources or synthetically. Infectious virus of both human and non-human vertebrates, include retroviruses, RNA viruses and DNA viruses. This group of retroviruses includes both simple retroviruses and complex retroviruses. The simple retroviruses include the subgroups of B-type retroviruses, C-type retroviruses and D-type retroviruses. An example of a B-type retrovirus is mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV).

The C-type retroviruses include subgroups C-type group A (including Rous sarcoma virus (RSV), avian leukemia virus (ALV), and avian myeloblastosis virus (AMV)) and C-type group B (including murine leukemia virus (MLV), feline leukemia virus (FeLV), murine sarcoma virus (MSV), gibbon ape leukemia virus (GALV), spleen necrosis virus (SNV),  
5 reticuloendotheliosis virus (RV) and simian sarcoma virus (SSV)). The D-type retroviruses include Mason-Pfizer monkey virus (MPMV) and simian retrovirus type 1 (SRV-1). The complex retroviruses include the subgroups of lentiviruses, T-cell leukemia viruses and the foamy viruses. Lentiviruses include HIV-1, but also include HIV-2, SIV, Visna virus, feline immunodeficiency virus (FIV), and equine infectious anemia virus (EIAV). The T-cell  
10 leukemia viruses include HTLV-I, HTLV-II, simian T-cell leukemia virus (STLV), and bovine leukemia virus (BLV). The foamy viruses include human foamy virus (HFV), simian foamy virus (SFV) and bovine foamy virus (BFV).

Examples of other RNA viruses that are antigens in vertebrate animals include, but are not limited to, the following: members of the family Reoviridae, including the genus  
15 Orthoreovirus (multiple serotypes of both mammalian and avian retroviruses), the genus Orbivirus (Bluetongue virus, Egeangue virus, Kemerovo virus, African horse sickness virus, and Colorado Tick Fever virus), the genus Rotavirus (human rotavirus, Nebraska calf diarrhea virus, murine rotavirus, simian rotavirus, bovine or ovine rotavirus, avian rotavirus); the family Picornaviridae, including the genus Enterovirus (poliovirus, Coxsackie virus A and  
20 B, enteric cytopathic human orphan (ECHO) viruses, hepatitis A virus, Simian enteroviruses, Murine encephalomyelitis (ME) viruses, Poliovirus muris, Bovine enteroviruses, Porcine enteroviruses, the genus Cardiovirus (Encephalomyocarditis virus (EMC), Mengovirus), the genus Rhinovirus (Human rhinoviruses including at least 113 subtypes; other rhinoviruses), the genus Aphovirus (Foot and Mouth disease (FMDV)); the family Calciviridae, including  
25 Vesicular exanthema of swine virus, San Miguel sea lion virus, Feline picornavirus and Norwalk virus; the family Togaviridae, including the genus Alphavirus (Eastern equine encephalitis virus, Semliki forest virus, Sindbis virus, Chikungunya virus, O'Nyong-Nyong virus, Ross river virus, Venezuelan equine encephalitis virus, Western equine encephalitis virus), the genus Flavivirus (Mosquito borne yellow fever virus, Dengue virus, Japanese  
30 encephalitis virus, St. Louis encephalitis virus, Murray Valley encephalitis virus, West Nile

virus, Kunjin virus, Central European tick borne virus, Far Eastern tick borne virus, Kyasanur forest virus, Louping III virus, Powassan virus, Omsk hemorrhagic fever virus), the genus Rubivirus (Rubella virus), the genus Pestivirus (Mucosal disease virus, Hog cholera virus, Border disease virus); the family Bunyaviridae, including the genus Bunyavirus (Bunyamwera and related viruses, California encephalitis group viruses), the genus Phlebovirus (Sandfly fever Sicilian virus, Rift Valley fever virus), the genus Nairovirus (Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus, Nairobi sheep disease virus), and the genus Uukuvirus (Uukuniemi and related viruses); the family Orthomyxoviridae, including the genus Influenza virus (Influenza virus type A, many human subtypes); Swine influenza virus, and Avian and Equine Influenza viruses; influenza type B (many human subtypes), and influenza type C (possible separate genus); the family paramyxoviridae, including the genus Paramyxovirus (Parainfluenza virus type 1, Sendai virus, Hemadsorption virus, Parainfluenza viruses types 2 to 5, Newcastle Disease Virus, Mumps virus), the genus Morbillivirus (Measles virus, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis virus, distemper virus, Rinderpest virus), the genus Pneumovirus (respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), Bovine respiratory syncytial virus and Pneumonia virus of mice); forest virus, Sindbis virus, Chikungunya virus, O'Nyong-Nyong virus, Ross river virus, Venezuelan equine encephalitis virus, Western equine encephalitis virus), the genus Flavivirus (Mosquito borne yellow fever virus, Dengue virus, Japanese encephalitis virus, St. Louis encephalitis virus, Murray Valley encephalitis virus, West Nile virus, Kunjin virus, Central European tick borne virus, Far Eastern tick borne virus, Kyasanur forest virus, Louping III virus, Powassan virus, Omsk hemorrhagic fever virus), the genus Rubivirus (Rubella virus), the genus Pestivirus (Mucosal disease virus, Hog cholera virus, Border disease virus); the family Bunyaviridae, including the genus Bunyavirus (Bunyamwera and related viruses, California encephalitis group viruses), the genus Phlebovirus (Sandfly fever Sicilian virus, Rift Valley fever virus), the genus Nairovirus (Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus, Nairobi sheep disease virus), and the genus Uukuvirus (Uukuniemi and related viruses); the family Orthomyxoviridae, including the genus Influenza virus (Influenza virus type A, many human subtypes); Swine influenza virus, and Avian and Equine Influenza viruses; influenza type B (many human subtypes), and influenza type C (possible separate genus); the family paramyxoviridae, including the genus Paramyxovirus



(Parainfluenza virus type 1, Sendai virus, Hemadsorption virus, Parainfluenza viruses types 2 to 5, Newcastle Disease Virus, Mumps virus), the genus Morbillivirus (Measles virus, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis virus, distemper virus, Rinderpest virus), the genus Pneumovirus (respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), Bovine respiratory syncytial virus and  
5 Pneumonia virus of mice); the family Rhabdoviridae, including the genus Vesiculovirus (VSV), Chandipura virus, Flanders-Hart Park virus), the genus Lyssavirus (Rabies virus), fish Rhabdoviruses, and two probable Rhabdoviruses (Marburg virus and Ebola virus); the family Arenaviridae, including Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus (LCM), Tacaribe virus complex, and Lassa virus; the family Coronaviridae, including Infectious Bronchitis Virus (IBV),  
10 Mouse Hepatitis virus, Human enteric corona virus, and Feline infectious peritonitis (Feline coronavirus).

Illustrative DNA viruses that are antigens in vertebrate animals include, but are not limited to: the family Poxviridae, including the genus Orthopoxvirus (Variola major, Variola minor, Monkey pox Vaccinia, Cowpox, Buffalopox, Rabbitpox, Ectromelia), the genus  
15 Leporipoxvirus (Myxoma, Fibroma), the genus Avipoxvirus (Fowlpox, other avian poxvirus), the genus Capripoxvirus (sheeppox, goatpox), the genus Suipoxvirus (Swinepox), the genus Parapoxvirus (contagious postular dermatitis virus, pseudocowpox, bovine papular stomatitis virus); the family Iridoviridae (African swine fever virus, Frog viruses 2 and 3, Lymphocystis virus of fish); the family Herpesviridae, including the alpha-Herpesviruses (Herpes Simplex  
20 Types 1 and 2, Varicella-Zoster, Equine abortion virus, Equine herpes virus 2 and 3, pseudorabies virus, infectious bovine keratoconjunctivitis virus, infectious bovine rhinotracheitis virus, feline rhinotracheitis virus, infectious laryngotracheitis virus) the Beta-herpesviruses (Human cytomegalovirus and cytomegaloviruses of swine, monkeys and rodents); the gamma-herpesviruses (Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), Marek's disease virus, Herpes  
25 saimiri, Herpesvirus ateles, Herpesvirus sylvilagus, guinea pig herpes virus, Lucke tumor virus); the family Adenoviridae, including the genus Mastadenovirus (Human subgroups A,B,C,D,E and ungrouped; simian adenoviruses (at least 23 serotypes), infectious canine hepatitis, and adenoviruses of cattle, pigs, sheep, frogs and many other species, the genus Aviadenovirus (Avian adenoviruses); and non-cultivable adenoviruses; the family  
30 Papoviridae, including the genus Papillomavirus (Human papilloma viruses, bovine papilloma

viruses, Shope rabbit papilloma virus, and various pathogenic papilloma viruses of other species), the genus Polyomavirus (polyomavirus, Simian vacuolating agent (SV-40). Rabbit vacuolating agent (RKV), K virus, BK virus, JC virus, and other primate polyoma viruses such as Lymphotropic papilloma virus); the family Parvoviridae including the genus  
5 Adeno-associated viruses, the genus Parvovirus (Feline panleukopenia virus, bovine parvovirus, canine parvovirus, Aleutian mink disease virus, etc). Finally, DNA viruses may include viruses which do not fit into the above families such as Kuru and Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease viruses and chronic infectious neuropathic agents (CIINA virus).

Each of the foregoing lists is illustrative, and is not intended to be limiting.

10 In addition to the use of the CpG oligonucleotides to induce an antigen specific immune response in humans, the methods of the preferred embodiments are particularly well suited for treatment of birds such as hens, chickens, turkeys, ducks, geese, quail, and pheasant. Birds are prime targets for many types of infections.

Hatching birds are exposed to pathogenic microorganisms shortly after birth.

15 Although these birds are initially protected against pathogens by maternal derived antibodies, this protection is only temporary, and the bird's own immature immune system must begin to protect the bird against the pathogens. It is often desirable to prevent infection in young birds when they are most susceptible. It is also desirable to prevent against infection in older birds, especially when the birds are housed in closed quarters, leading to the rapid spread of disease.  
20 Thus, it is desirable to administer the CpG oligonucleotide and the non-nucleic acid adjuvant of the invention to birds to enhance an antigen-specific immune response when antigen is present.

An example of a common infection in chickens is chicken infectious anemia virus (CIAV). CIAV was first isolated in Japan in 1979 during an investigation of a Marek's  
25 disease vaccination break (Yuasa et al., 1979, Avian Dis. 23:366-385). Since that time, CIAV has been detected in commercial poultry in all major poultry producing countries (van Bulow et al., 1991, pp.690-699) in Diseases of Poultry, 9th edition, Iowa State University Press).

CIAV infection results in a clinical disease, characterized by anemia, hemorrhage and immunosuppression, in young susceptible chickens. Atrophy of the thymus and of the bone  
30 marrow and consistent lesions of CIAV-infected chickens are also characteristic of CIAV

infection. Lymphocyte depletion in the thymus, and occasionally in the bursa of Fabricius, results in immunosuppression and increased susceptibility to secondary viral, bacterial, or fungal infections which then complicate the course of the disease. The immunosuppression may cause aggravated disease after infection with one or more of Marek's disease virus (MDV), infectious bursal disease virus, reticuloendotheliosis virus, adenovirus, or reovirus. It has been reported that pathogenesis of MDV is enhanced by CIAV (DeBoer et al., 1989, p. 28 In Proceedings of the 38th Western Poultry Diseases Conference, Tempe, Ariz.). Further, it has been reported that CIAV aggravates the signs of infectious bursal disease (Rosenberger et al., 1989, Avian Dis. 33:707-713). Chickens develop an age resistance to experimentally induced disease due to CAA. This is essentially complete by the age of 2 weeks, but older birds are still susceptible to infection (Yuasa, N. et al., 1979 supra; Yuasa, N. et al., Arian Diseases 24, 202-209, 1980). However, if chickens are dually infected with CAA and an immunosuppressive agent (IBDV, MDV etc.) age resistance against the disease is delayed (Yuasa, N. et al., 1979 and 1980 supra; Bulow von V. et al., J. Veterinary Medicine 33, 93-116, 1986). Characteristics of CIAV that may potentiate disease transmission include high resistance to environmental inactivation and some common disinfectants. The economic impact of CIAV infection on the poultry industry is clear from the fact that 10% to 30% of infected birds in disease outbreaks die.

Vaccination of birds, like other vertebrate animals can be performed at any age. Normally, vaccinations are performed at up to 12 weeks of age for a live microorganism and between 14-18 weeks for an inactivated microorganism or other type of vaccine. For in ovo vaccination, vaccination can be performed in the last quarter of embryo development. The vaccine may be administered subcutaneously, by spray, orally, intraocularly, intratracheally, nasally, or by other mucosal delivery methods described herein. Thus, the CpG oligonucleotide of the invention can be administered to birds and other non-human vertebrates using routine vaccination schedules and the antigen is administered after an appropriate time period as described herein.

Cattle and livestock are also susceptible to infection. Disease which affect these animals can produce severe economic losses, especially amongst cattle. The methods of the invention can be used to protect against infection in livestock, such as cows, horses, pigs,

sheep, and goats.

Cows can be infected by bovine viruses. Bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV) is a small enveloped positive-stranded RNA virus and is classified, along with hog cholera virus (HOCV) and sheep border disease virus (BDV), in the pestivirus genus. Although, 5 Pestiviruses were previously classified in the Togaviridae family, some studies have suggested their reclassification within the Flaviviridae family along with the flavivirus and hepatitis C virus (HCV) groups (Francki, et al., 1991).

BVDV, which is an important pathogen of cattle can be distinguished, based on cell culture analysis, into cytopathogenic (CP) and noncytopathogenic (NCP) biotypes. The NCP 10 biotype is more widespread although both biotypes can be found in cattle. If a pregnant cow becomes infected with an NCP strain, the cow can give birth to a persistently infected and specifically immunotolerant calf that will spread virus during its lifetime. The persistently infected cattle can succumb to mucosal disease and both biotypes can then be isolated from the animal. Clinical manifestations can include abortion, teratogenesis, and respiratory 15 problems, mucosal disease and mild diarrhea. In addition, severe thrombocytopenia, associated with herd epidemics, that may result in the death of the animal has been described and strains associated with this disease seem more virulent than the classical BVDVs.

Equine herpesviruses (EHV) comprise a group of antigenically distinct biological agents which cause a variety of infections in horses ranging from subclinical to fatal disease. 20 These include Equine herpesvirus-1 (EHV-1), a ubiquitous pathogen in horses. EHV-1 is associated with epidemics of abortion, respiratory tract disease, and central nervous system disorders. Primary infection of upper respiratory tract of young horses results in a febrile illness which lasts for 8 to 10 days. Immunologically experienced mares may be reinfected via the respiratory tract without disease becoming apparent, so that abortion usually occurs 25 without warning. The neurological syndrome is associated with respiratory disease or abortion and can affect animals of either sex at any age, leading to incoordination, weakness and posterior paralysis (Telford, E. A. R. et al., Virology 189, 304-316, 1992). Other EHV's include EHV-2, or equine cytomegalovirus, EHV-3, equine coital exanthema virus, and EHV-4, previously classified as EHV-1 subtype 2.

30 Sheep and goats can be infected by a variety of dangerous microorganisms including

visna-maedi.

Primates such as monkeys, apes and macaques can be infected by simian immunodeficiency virus. Inactivated cell-virus and cell-free whole simian immunodeficiency vaccines have been reported to afford protection in macaques (Stott et al. (1990) Lancet 36:1538-1541; Desrosiers et al. PNAS USA (1989) 86:6353-6357; Murphey-Corb et al. (1989) Science 246:1293-1297; and Carlson et al. (1990) AIDS Res. Human Retroviruses 6:1239-1246). A recombinant HIV gp120 vaccine has been reported to afford protection in chimpanzees (Berman et al. (1990) Nature 345:622-625).

Cats, both domestic and wild, are susceptible to infection with a variety of microorganisms. For instance, feline infectious peritonitis is a disease which occurs in both domestic and wild cats, such as lions, leopards, cheetahs, and jaguars. When it is desirable to prevent infection with this and other types of pathogenic organisms in cats, the methods of the invention can be used to vaccinate cats to protect them against infection.

Domestic cats may become infected with several retroviruses, including but not limited to feline leukemia virus (FeLV), feline sarcoma virus (FeSV), endogenous type C oncornavirus (RD-114), and feline syncytia-forming virus (FeSFV). Of these, FeLV is the most significant pathogen, causing diverse symptoms, including lymphoreticular and myeloid neoplasms, anemias, immune mediated disorders, and an immunodeficiency syndrome which is similar to human acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). Recently, a particular replication-defective FeLV mutant, designated FeLV-AIDS, has been more particularly associated with immunosuppressive properties.

The discovery of feline T-lymphotropic lentivirus (also referred to as feline immunodeficiency) was first reported in Pedersen et al. (1987) Science 235:790-793. Characteristics of FIV have been reported in Yamamoto et al. (1988) Leukemia, December Supplement 2:204S-215S; Yamamoto et al. (1988) Am. J. Vet. Res. 49:1246-1258; and Ackley et al. (1990) J. Virol. 64:5652-5655. Cloning and sequence analysis of FIV have been reported in Olmsted et al. (1989) Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:2448-2452 and 86:4355-4360.

Feline infectious peritonitis (FIP) is a sporadic disease occurring unpredictably in domestic and wild Felidae. While FIP is primarily a disease of domestic cats, it has been diagnosed in lions, mountain lions, leopards, cheetahs, and the jaguar. Smaller wild cats that have been afflicted with FIP include the lynx and caracal, sand cat, and pallas cat. In domestic

cats, the disease occurs predominantly in young animals, although cats of all ages are susceptible. A peak incidence occurs between 6 and 12 months of age. A decline in incidence is noted from 5 to 13 years of age, followed by an increased incidence in cats 14 to 15 years old.

5           Viral, bacterial, and parasitic diseases in fin-fish, shellfish or other aquatic life forms pose a serious problem for the aquaculture industry. Owing to the high density of animals in the hatchery tanks or enclosed marine farming areas, infectious diseases may eradicate a large proportion of the stock in, for example, a fin-fish, shellfish, or other aquatic life forms facility. Prevention of disease is a more desired remedy to these threats to fish than intervention once  
10           the disease is in progress. Vaccination of fish is the only preventative method which may offer long-term protection through immunity. Nucleic acid based vaccinations are described in US Patent No. 5,780,448 issued to Davis.

          The fish immune system has many features similar to the mammalian immune system, such as the presence of B cells, T cells, lymphokines, complement, and immunoglobulins.

15           Fish have lymphocyte subclasses with roles that appear similar in many respects to those of the B and T cells of mammals. Vaccines can be administered by immersion or orally.

          Aquaculture species include but are not limited to fin-fish, shellfish, and other aquatic animals. Fin-fish include all vertebrate fish, which may be bony or cartilaginous fish, such as, for example, salmonids, carp, catfish, yellowtail, seabream, and seabass. Salmonids are a  
20           family of fin-fish which include trout (including rainbow trout), salmon, and Arctic char. Examples of shellfish include, but are not limited to, clams, lobster, shrimp, crab, and oysters. Other cultured aquatic animals include, but are not limited to eels, squid, and octopi.

          Polypeptides of viral aquaculture pathogens include but are not limited to glycoprotein (G) or nucleoprotein (N) of viral hemorrhagic septicemia virus (VHSV); G or N proteins of  
25           infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus (IHNV); VP1, VP2, VP3 or N structural proteins of infectious pancreatic necrosis virus (IPNV); G protein of spring viremia of carp (SVC); and a membrane-associated protein, tegumin or capsid protein or glycoprotein of channel catfish virus (CCV).

          Polypeptides of bacterial pathogens include but are not limited to an iron-regulated  
30           outer membrane protein, (IROMP), an outer membrane protein (OMP), and an A-protein of *Aeromonis salmonicida* which causes furunculosis, p57 protein of *Renibacterium salmoninarum* which causes bacterial kidney disease (BKD), major surface associated antigen

(msa), a surface expressed cytotoxin (mpr), a surface expressed hemolysin (ish), and a flagellar antigen of Yersiniosis; an extracellular protein (ECP), an iron-regulated outer membrane protein (IROMP), and a structural protein of Pasteurellosis; an OMP and a flagellar protein of Vibrosis anguillarum and *V. ordalii*; a flagellar protein, an OMP protein, *aroA*, and *purA* of Edwardsiellosis ictaluri and *E. tarda*; and surface antigen of Ichthyophthirius; and a structural and regulatory protein of Cytophaga columnari; and a structural and regulatory protein of Rickettsia.

Polypeptides of a parasitic pathogen include but are not limited to the surface antigens of Ichthyophthirius.

10 An "allergen" refers to a substance (antigen) that can induce an allergic or asthmatic response in a susceptible subject. The list of allergens is enormous and can include pollens, insect venoms, animal dander dust, fungal spores and drugs (e.g. penicillin). Examples of natural, animal and plant allergens include but are not limited to proteins specific to the following genres: *Canine* (*Canis familiaris*); *Dermatophagoides* (e.g. *Dermatophagoides*  
15 *farinae*); *Felis* (*Felis domesticus*); *Ambrosia* (*Ambrosia artemisiifolia*; *Lolium* (e.g. *Lolium perenne* or *Lolium multiflorum*); *Cryptomeria* (*Cryptomeria japonica*); *Alternaria* (*Alternaria alternata*); *Alder*; *Alnus* (*Alnus gultinoasa*); *Betula* (*Betula verrucosa*); *Quercus* (*Quercus alba*); *Olea* (*Olea europa*); *Artemisia* (*Artemisia vulgaris*); *Plantago* (e.g. *Plantago lanceolata*); *Parietaria* (e.g. *Parietaria officinalis* or *Parietaria judaica*); *Blattella* (e.g.  
20 *Blattella germanica*); *Apis* (e.g. *Apis multiflorum*); *Cupressus* (e.g. *Cupressus sempervirens*, *Cupressus arizonica* and *Cupressus macrocarpa*); *Juniperus* (e.g. *Juniperus sabinoides*, *Juniperus virginiana*, *Juniperus communis* and *Juniperus ashei*); *Thuja* (e.g. *Thuja orientalis*); *Chamaecyparis* (e.g. *Chamaecyparis obtusa*); *Periplaneta* (e.g. *Periplaneta americana*); *Agropyron* (e.g. *Agropyron repens*); *Secale* (e.g. *Secale cereale*); *Triticum* (e.g.  
25 *Triticum aestivum*); *Dactylis* (e.g. *Dactylis glomerata*); *Festuca* (e.g. *Festuca elatior*); *Poa* (e.g. *Poa pratensis* or *Poa compressa*); *Avena* (e.g. *Avena sativa*); *Holcus* (e.g. *Holcus lanatus*); *Anthoxanthum* (e.g. *Anthoxanthum odoratum*); *Arrhenatherum* (e.g. *Arrhenatherum elatius*); *Agrostis* (e.g. *Agrostis alba*); *Phleum* (e.g. *Phleum pratense*); *Phalaris* (e.g. *Phalaris arundinacea*); *Paspalum* (e.g. *Paspalum notatum*); *Sorghum* (e.g. *Sorghum halepensis*); and  
30 *Bromus* (e.g. *Bromus inermis*).

The antigen may be an antigen that is encoded by a nucleic acid vector or it may be not encoded in a nucleic acid vector. In the former case the nucleic acid vector is administered to

the subject and the antigen is expressed *in vivo*. In the latter case the antigen is administered directly to the subject. An "antigen not encoded in a nucleic acid vector" as used herein refers to any type of antigen that is not a nucleic acid. For instance, in some aspects of the invention the antigen not encoded in a nucleic acid vector is a polypeptide. Minor modifications of the primary amino acid sequences of polypeptide antigens may also result in a polypeptide which has substantially equivalent antigenic activity as compared to the unmodified counterpart polypeptide. Such modifications may be deliberate, as by site-directed mutagenesis, or may be spontaneous. All of the polypeptides produced by these modifications are included herein as long as antigenicity still exists. The polypeptide may be, for example, a viral polypeptide. One non-limiting example of an antigen useful according to the invention is the hepatitis B surface antigen. Experiments using this antigen are described in the Examples below.

The term "substantially purified" as used herein refers to a polypeptide which is substantially free of other proteins, lipids, carbohydrates or other materials with which it is naturally associated. One skilled in the art can purify viral or bacterial polypeptides using standard techniques for protein purification. The substantially pure polypeptide will often yield a single major band on a non-reducing polyacrylamide gel. In the case of partially glycosylated polypeptides or those that have several start codons, there may be several bands on a non-reducing polyacrylamide gel, but these will form a distinctive pattern for that polypeptide. The purity of the viral or bacterial polypeptide can also be determined by amino-terminal amino acid sequence analysis.

The invention also utilizes polynucleotides encoding the antigenic polypeptides. It is envisioned that the antigen may be delivered to the subject in a nucleic acid molecule which encodes for the antigen such that the antigen must be expressed *in vivo*. Such antigens delivered to the subject in a nucleic acid vector are referred to as "antigens encoded by a nucleic acid vector." The nucleic acid encoding the antigen is operatively linked to a gene expression sequence which directs the expression of the antigen nucleic acid within a eukaryotic cell. The "gene expression sequence" is any regulatory nucleotide sequence, such as a promoter sequence or promoter-enhancer combination, which facilitates the efficient transcription and translation of the antigen nucleic acid to which it is operatively linked. The gene expression sequence may, for example, be a mammalian or viral promoter, such as a constitutive or inducible promoter. Constitutive mammalian promoters include, but are not limited to, the promoters for the following genes: hypoxanthine phosphoribosyl transferase



(HPTR), adenosine deaminase, pyruvate kinase,  $\beta$ -actin promoter and other constitutive promoters. Exemplary viral promoters which function constitutively in eukaryotic cells include, for example, promoters from the cytomegalovirus (CMV), simian virus (e.g., SV40), papilloma virus, adenovirus, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), Rous sarcoma virus, cytomegalovirus, the long terminal repeats (LTR) of Moloney leukemia virus and other retroviruses, and the thymidine kinase promoter of herpes simplex virus. Other constitutive promoters are known to those of ordinary skill in the art. The promoters useful as gene expression sequences of the invention also include inducible promoters. Inducible promoters are expressed in the presence of an inducing agent. For example, the metallothionein promoter is induced to promote transcription and translation in the presence of certain metal ions. Other inducible promoters are known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

In general, the gene expression sequence shall include, as necessary, 5' non-transcribing and 5' non-translating sequences involved with the initiation of transcription and translation, respectively, such as a TATA box, capping sequence, CAA'T sequence, and the like. Especially, such 5' non-transcribing sequences will include a promoter region which includes a promoter sequence for transcriptional control of the operably joined antigen nucleic acid. The gene expression sequences optionally include enhancer sequences or upstream activator sequences as desired.

The antigen nucleic acid is operatively linked to the gene expression sequence. As used herein, the antigen nucleic acid sequence and the gene expression sequence are said to be "operably linked" when they are covalently linked in such a way as to place the expression or transcription and/or translation of the antigen coding sequence under the influence or control of the gene expression sequence. Two DNA sequences are said to be operably linked if induction of a promoter in the 5' gene expression sequence results in the transcription of the antigen sequence and if the nature of the linkage between the two DNA sequences does not (1) result in the introduction of a frame-shift mutation, (2) interfere with the ability of the promoter region to direct the transcription of the antigen sequence, or (3) interfere with the ability of the corresponding RNA transcript to be translated into a protein. Thus, a gene expression sequence would be operably linked to an antigen nucleic acid sequence if the gene expression sequence were capable of effecting transcription of that antigen nucleic acid sequence such that the resulting transcript is translated into the desired protein or polypeptide.

The antigen nucleic acid of the invention may be delivered to the immune system

alone or in association with a vector. In its broadest sense, a "vector" is any vehicle capable of facilitating the transfer of the antigen nucleic acid to the cells of the immune system so that the antigen can be expressed and presented on the surface of the immune cell. The vector generally transports the nucleic acid to the immune cells with reduced degradation relative to the extent of degradation that would result in the absence of the vector. The vector optionally includes the above-described gene expression sequence to enhance expression of the antigen nucleic acid in immune cells. In general, the vectors useful in the invention include, but are not limited to, plasmids, phagemids, viruses, other vehicles derived from viral or bacterial sources that have been manipulated by the insertion or incorporation of the antigen nucleic acid sequences. Viral vectors are a preferred type of vector and include, but are not limited to nucleic acid sequences from the following viruses: retrovirus, such as Moloney murine leukemia virus, Harvey murine sarcoma virus, murine mammary tumor virus, and Rous sarcoma virus; adenovirus, adeno-associated virus; SV40-type viruses; polyoma viruses; Epstein-Barr viruses; papilloma viruses; herpes virus; vaccinia virus; polio virus; and RNA virus such as a retrovirus. One can readily employ other vectors not named but known to the art.

Preferred viral vectors are based on non-cytopathic eukaryotic viruses in which non-essential genes have been replaced with the gene of interest. Non-cytopathic viruses include retroviruses, the life cycle of which involves reverse transcription of genomic viral RNA into DNA with subsequent proviral integration into host cellular DNA. Retroviruses have been approved for human gene therapy trials. Most useful are those retroviruses that are replication-deficient (i.e., capable of directing synthesis of the desired proteins, but incapable of manufacturing an infectious particle). Such genetically altered retroviral expression vectors have general utility for the high-efficiency transduction of genes *in vivo*. Standard protocols for producing replication-deficient retroviruses (including the steps of incorporation of exogenous genetic material into a plasmid, transfection of a packaging cell lined with plasmid, production of recombinant retroviruses by the packaging cell line, collection of viral particles from tissue culture media, and infection of the target cells with viral particles) are provided in Kriegler, M., "Gene Transfer and Expression, A Laboratory Manual," W.H. Freeman C.O., New York (1990) and Murry, E.J. Ed. "Methods in Molecular Biology," vol. 7, Humana Press, Inc., Clifton, New Jersey (1991).

A preferred virus for certain applications is the adeno-associated virus, a

double-stranded DNA virus. The adeno-associated virus can be engineered to be replication-deficient and is capable of infecting a wide range of cell types and species. It further has advantages such as, heat and lipid solvent stability; high transduction frequencies in cells of diverse lineages, including hemopoietic cells; and lack of superinfection inhibition thus  
5 allowing multiple series of transductions. Reportedly, the adeno-associated virus can integrate into human cellular DNA in a site-specific manner, thereby minimizing the possibility of insertional mutagenesis and variability of inserted gene expression characteristic of retroviral infection. In addition, wild-type adeno-associated virus infections have been followed in tissue culture for greater than 100 passages in the absence of selective pressure,  
10 implying that the adeno-associated virus genomic integration is a relatively stable event. The adeno-associated virus can also function in an extrachromosomal fashion.

Other vectors include plasmid vectors. Plasmid vectors have been extensively described in the art and are well-known to those of skill in the art. See e.g., Sambrook et al., "Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual," Second Edition, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory  
15 Press, 1989. In the last few years, plasmid vectors have been found to be particularly advantageous for delivering genes to cells *in vivo* because of their inability to replicate within and integrate into a host genome. These plasmids, however, having a promoter compatible with the host cell, can express a peptide from a gene operatively encoded within the plasmid. Some commonly used plasmids include pBR322, pUC18, pUC19, pRC/CMV, SV40, and  
20 pBlueScript. Other plasmids are well-known to those of ordinary skill in the art. Additionally, plasmids may be custom designed using restriction enzymes and ligation reactions to remove and add specific fragments of DNA.

It has recently been discovered that gene carrying plasmids can be delivered to the immune system using bacteria. Modified forms of bacteria such as *Salmonella* can be  
25 transfected with the plasmid and used as delivery vehicles. The bacterial delivery vehicles can be administered to a host subject orally or by other administration means. The bacteria deliver the plasmid to immune cells, e.g. dendritic cells, probably by passing through the gut barrier. High levels of immune protection have been established using this methodology. Such methods of delivery are useful for the aspects of the invention utilizing systemic delivery of  
30 antigen, CpG oligonucleotide and/or hormone.

CpG oligonucleotide can act in a synergistic manner with other mucosal adjuvants to enhance immune responses. The CpG oligonucleotide and mucosal adjuvant may be

administered simultaneously or sequentially. When the adjuvants are administered simultaneously they can be administered in the same or separate formulations, but are administered at the same time. The adjuvants are administered sequentially, when the administration of the at least two adjuvants is temporally separated. The separation in time  
5 between the administration of the two adjuvants may be a matter of minutes or it may be longer.

As shown in the Examples section, titers of serum anti-HBs IgG, which is associated with systemic immunity, in mice immunized with CpG oligonucleotide plus CT were at least 50-fold higher than with CT or CpG oligonucleotide alone (Figure 1). Furthermore, titers  
10 with 1  $\mu$ g of the two adjuvants together gave better results than 10  $\mu$ g of either adjuvant alone. These results indicate a synergistic action of the two adjuvants. Similar results were also obtained with CpG and LT. Such synergy was seen for both humoral (Figures 1–3) and cell-mediated (CTL and T-cell proliferation) (Figure 4) responses. As well, the proportion of IgG2a isotype of antibodies, was about 10-times greater with CpG ODN than CT, indicating a  
15 greater Th1 influence of CpG ODN compared to CT. Furthermore, the combination of CpG ODN and CT gave a 50-times higher IgG2a:IgG1 ratio than CT alone. Taken together, these results indicate a strong synergy of the adjuvant combination humoral immune responses, with respect to both strength and Th1-bias, and cellular immune responses (Figure 3).

The hallmark of mucosal immunity is the presence of secretory IgA antibodies in  
20 association with mucosal surfaces. IgA antibodies are essential to prevent entry of the pathogen into the body. IN immunization of mice with HBsAg alone, 1 or 10  $\mu$ g, failed to induce any detectable IgA in lung washes. Nor was there any IgA with the low dose of antigen and a low dose (1  $\mu$ g) of CT or CpG ODN. However there was significant IgA with a high dose of antigen and low dose of either CT or CpG ODN or a low dose of antigen and a low  
25 dose of combined adjuvants. In fact, IgA levels with 1  $\mu$ g of each of CpG ODN and CT combined were higher than with 10  $\mu$ g of either alone, when administered with 10  $\mu$ g HBsAg (Figure 5). Furthermore, IgA in fecal extracts, which indicates induction of mucosal immunity at distant sites, was detected only with the combined adjuvants (Figure 6). These results indicate that CpG ODN is a potent adjuvant for induction of mucosal immunity and that there  
30 is a strong synergistic response when used with another mucosal adjuvant such as CT.

Similar results were found when LT was used in place of CT (Figure 7, Tables 2 and 3). CT and LT, which are closely related with considerable structural and functional homology, are both too toxic for use in humans. However there are a number of derivations of CT and LT that retain some adjuvant activity yet are much less toxic. One example is the B-subunit of CT (CTB) which is non-toxic since the toxicity is associated with the A subunit. Another example is LTK63, a genetically detoxified mutant of LT with no toxic enzymatic activity. Although these adjuvants are being used in human clinical trials, neither was as strong as CpG ODN for induction of systemic immunity (serum IgG) when each was used at 1  $\mu$ g (Figure 7). There was also a synergistic effect when CpG ODN and CTB or LTK63 were used together, however this was more noticeable for Th1-bias than for strength of the antibody response (Figure 7 and Table 2). The combination of CpG ODN and LTK63 also induced IgA in lung washes, even though neither adjuvant on its own induced IgA at low concentrations (Table 3).

The strong adjuvant activity and low toxicity of CpG oligonucleotide when delivered to a mucosal surface has important implications. It will allow many antigens to be delivered to mucosal surfaces for the induction of strong systemic immune responses. Non-invasive vaccine delivery is desirable for immunization of children, animals, mass vaccination programs and also to avoid the risk of needle-stick injury. Such vaccines could be delivered intranasally by nose-drops or nasal spray or with a delivery system, or they could be delivered by other routes (oral, rectal, ocular) to other mucosal surfaces, including with different delivery systems.

The synergistic interaction of CpG oligonucleotide with mucosal adjuvants has important implications in vaccine development. Because of the synergistic response it is now possible to use lower and less toxic doses of mucosal adjuvants such as CT, or other related toxins or subunits thereof, in conjunction with CpG oligonucleotide to obtain even better immune responses with less toxicity. For example, it would be possible to use CpG oligonucleotide in combination with a less toxic genetically modified mutants of CT or LT, for a highly effective vaccine of acceptable toxicity. Not only could the combined adjuvant approach be used to advantage with different toxins, but also with different forms of antigen, and different delivery systems to various mucosal routes. An effective amount as used with respect to this aspect of the invention is an amount that produces a synergistic immune response. A

synergistic amount is that amount which produces an immune response against a specific antigen that is greater than the sum of the individual effects of either the CpG or the mucosal adjuvant alone.

The invention can also be used in combination with parenteral immunization strategies (e.g., intramuscular, intradermal or subcutaneous injection), which are normally used for the induction of systemic immune responses. Remarkably, mice immunized with HBsAg and having CpG oligonucleotide as at least one adjuvant, when primed by a parenteral route (IM) and boosted by a mucosal route (IN) or primed IN and boosted IM had up to 10-fold higher IgG (i.e., systemic humoral response) than when both prime and boost were by the IM route (Figure 8). Cellular immune responses were also stronger with the parenteral/mucosal combined approaches than with only IN or only IM, as indicated by stronger CTL (Figure 9) and higher T-cell proliferation (Figure 10). While the IN prime and boost gives good mucosal responses the IM prime and boost gives no detectable mucosal responses (Figures 11-13). The IM prime and IN boost approach also gave significant IgA in lung washes (Figure 11) and saliva (Figure 12) but not feces (Figure 13).

The mucosal adjuvants useful according to the invention are non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvants. A "non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant" as used herein is an adjuvant other than a CpG oligonucleotide that is capable of inducing a mucosal immune response in a subject when administered to a mucosal surface in conjunction with an antigen. Mucosal adjuvants include but are not limited to Bacterial toxins: e.g., Cholera toxin (CT), CT derivatives including but not limited to CT B subunit (CTB) (Wu et al., 1998, Tochikubo et al., 1998); CTD53 (Val to Asp) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTK97 (Val to Lys) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTK104 (Tyr to Lys) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTD53/K63 (Val to Asp, Ser to Lys) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTH54 (Arg to His) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTN107 (His to Asn) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTE114 (Ser to Glu) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTE112K (Glu to Lys) (Yamamoto et al., 1997a); CTS61F (Ser to Phe) (Yamamoto et al., 1997a, 1997b); CTS106 (Pro to Lys) (Douce et al., 1997, Fontana et al., 1995); and CTK63 (Ser to Lys) (Douce et al., 1997, Fontana et al., 1995). Zonula occludens toxin, zot. Escherichia coli heat-labile enterotoxin, Labile Toxin (LT), LT derivatives including but not limited to LT B subunit (LTB) (Verweij et al., 1998); LT7K (Arg to Lys) (Komase et al., 1998, Douce et al., 1995); LT61F (Ser to Phe) (Komase et al., 1998); LT112K (Glu to Lys) (Komase et al., 1998); LT118E (Gly to Glu) (Komase et al., 1998); LT146E (Arg to Glu) (Komase et al., 1998);

LT192G (Arg to Gly) (Komase et al., 1998); LTK63 (Ser to Lys) (Marchetti et al., 1998, Douce et al., 1997, 1998, Di Tommaso et al., 1996); and LTR72 (Ala to Arg) (Giuliani et al., 1998), Pertussis toxin, PT. (Lycke et al., 1992, Spangler BD, 1992, Freytag and Clemments, 1999, Roberts et al., 1995, Wilson et al., 1995) including PT-9K/129G (Roberts et al., 1995, 5 Cropley et al., 1995); Toxin derivatives (see below) (Holmgren et al., 1993, Verweij et al., 1998, Rappuoli et al., 1995, Freytag and Clements, 1999); Lipid A derivatives (e.g., monophosphoryl lipid A, MPL) (Sasaki et al., 1998, Vancott et al., 1998; Muramyl Dipeptide (MDP) derivatives (Fukushima et al., 1996, Ogawa et al., 1989, Michalek et al., 1983, Morisaki et al., 1983); Bacterial outer membrane proteins (e.g., outer surface protein A 10 (OspA) lipoprotein of *Borrelia burgdorferi*, outer membrane protine of *Neisseria meningitidis*)(Marinaro et al., 1999, Van de Verg et al., 1996); Oil-in-water emulsions (e.g., MF59) (Barchfield et al., 1999, Verschoor et al., 1999, O'Hagan, 1998); Aluminum salts (Isaka et al., 1998, 1999); and Saponins (e.g., QS21) Aquila Biopharmaceuticals, Inc., Worcester, MA) (Sasaki et al., 1998, MacNeal et al., 1998). ISCOMS, MF-59 (a squalene-in- 15 water emulsion stabilized with Span 85 and Tween 80; Chiron Corporation, Emeryville, CA); the Seppic ISA series of Montanide adjuvants (e.g., Montanide ISA 720; AirLiquide, Paris, France); PROVAX (an oil-in-water emulsion containing a stabilizing detergent and a micell-forming agent; IDEC Pharmaceuticals Corporation, San Diego, CA); Syntex Adjuvant Formulation (SAF; Syntex Chemicals, Inc., Boulder, CO); 20 poly[di(carboxylatophenoxy)phosphazene (PCPP polymer: Virus Research Institute, USA) and Leishmania elongation factor (Corixa Corporation, Seattle, WA).

Although mucosal delivery of the antigen is considered a prerequisite for induction of strong mucosal immune responses, it is possible to induce strong mucosal immunity to systemically delivered antigens by modulating the immune response with steroid hormones, such 25 as described for 1,25-Dihydroxy vitamin D<sub>3</sub> [1,25(OH)<sub>2</sub>D<sub>3</sub>] (Daynes *et al.*, 1996). The invention also includes methods for the administration of CpG oligonucleotide alone or in combination with other mucosal adjuvants and antigen to hormonally treated individuals. Each of the compounds may be administered together or separately, systemically or mucosally. In some embodiments the CpG oligonucleotide and antigen and optionally other mucosal adjuvants are administered 30 mucosally and the hormone is administered systemically. The hormone may be given parenterally (e.g., subcutaneous injection) or mucosally (e.g., orally).

Mucosal immune responses can also be induced with the co-administration of cytokines with the CpG oligonucleotides. Immune responses can also be augmented by co-linear expression of cytokines (Bueler & Mulligan, 1996; Chow *et al.*, 1997; Geissler *et al.*, 1997; Iwasaki *et al.*, 1997; Kim *et al.*, 1997) or B-7 co-stimulatory molecules (Iwasaki *et al.*, 1997; Tsuji *et al.*, 1997). The cytokines can be administered directly with CpG oligonucleotides or may be administered in the form of a nucleic acid vector that encodes the cytokine, such that the cytokine can be expressed *in vivo*. In one embodiment, when the CpG is administered in the form of a plasmid expression vector, the vector may encode the cytokine, and a separate administration of cytokine is not required. The term "cytokine" is used as a generic name for a diverse group of soluble proteins and peptides which act as humoral regulators at nano- to picomolar concentrations and which, either under normal or pathological conditions, modulate the functional activities of individual cells and tissues. These proteins also mediate interactions between cells directly and regulate processes taking place in the extracellular environment. Examples of cytokines include, but are not limited to IL-1, IL-2, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-10, IL-12, IL-15, granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), granulocyte colony stimulating factor (GCSF), interferon- $\gamma$  ( $\gamma$ -INF), tumor necrosis factor (TNF), TGF- $\beta$ , FLT-3 ligand, and CD40 ligand.

Cytokines play a role in directing the T cell response. Helper (CD4+) T cells orchestrate the immune response of mammals through production of soluble factors that act on other immune system cells, including other T cells. Most mature CD4+ T helper cells express one of two cytokine profiles: Th1 or Th2. Th1 cells express IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-9, IL-10, IL-13, GM-CSF and low levels of TNF- $\alpha$ . The TH1 subset promotes delayed-type hypersensitivity, cell-mediated immunity, and immunoglobulin class switching to IgG<sub>2a</sub>. The Th2 subset induces humoral immunity by activating B cells, promoting antibody production, and inducing class switching to IgG<sub>1</sub> and IgE. In some embodiments it is preferred that the cytokine be a Th1 cytokine.

CpG oligonucleotides were found, surprisingly, to induce mucosal immunity in remote sites as well as local sites. A "remote site" as used herein is a mucosal tissue that is located in a different region of the body than the mucosal tissue to which the CpG oligonucleotide has been administered. For instance if the CpG oligonucleotide is administered intranasally, a remote site would be the mucosal lining of the gut.



For use in the instant invention, the nucleic acids can be synthesized *de novo* using any of a number of procedures well known in the art. For example, the b-cyanoethyl phosphoramidite method (Beaucage, S.L., and Caruthers, M.H., *Tet. Let.* 22:1859, 1981); nucleoside H-phosphonate method (Garegg *et al.*, *Tet. Let.* 27:4051-4054, 1986; Froehler *et al.*, *Nucl. Acid. Res.* 14:5399-5407, 1986; Garegg *et al.*, *Tet. Let.* 27:4055-4058, 1986; Gaffney *et al.*, *Tet. Let.* 29:2619-2622, 1988). These chemistries can be performed by a variety of automated oligonucleotide synthesizers available in the market. Alternatively, CpG dinucleotides can be produced on a large scale in plasmids. (see Sambrook, T., *et al.*, Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor laboratory Press, New York, 1989) and separated into smaller pieces or administered whole. After being administered to a subject the plasmid can be degraded into oligonucleotides. Oligonucleotides can be prepared from existing nucleic acid sequences (*e.g.*, genomic or cDNA) using known techniques, such as those employing restriction enzymes, exonucleases or endonucleases.

For use *in vivo*, nucleic acids are preferably relatively resistant to degradation (*e.g.*, via endo-and exo-nucleases). Secondary structures, such as stem loops, can stabilize nucleic acids against degradation. Alternatively, nucleic acid stabilization can be accomplished via phosphate backbone modifications. One type of stabilized nucleic acid has at least a partial phosphorothioate modified backbone. Phosphorothioates may be synthesized using automated techniques employing either phosphoramidate or H-phosphonate chemistries. Aryl- and alkyl-phosphonates can be made, *e.g.*, as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,469,863; and alkylphosphotriesters (in which the charged oxygen moiety is alkylated as described in U.S. Patent No. 5,023,243 and European Patent No. 092,574) can be prepared by automated solid phase synthesis using commercially available reagents. Methods for making other DNA backbone modifications and substitutions have been described (Uhlmann, E. and Peyman, A., *Chem. Rev.* 90:544, 1990; Goodchild, J., *Bioconjugate Chem.* 1:165, 1990).

Nucleic acids containing an appropriate unmethylated CpG can be effective in any vertebrate. Different nucleic acids containing an unmethylated CpG can cause optimal immune stimulation depending on the mammalian species. Thus an oligonucleotide causing optimal stimulation in humans may not cause optimal stimulation in a mouse and vice versa. One of skill in the art can identify the optimal oligonucleotides useful for a particular mammalian species of interest using routine assays described herein and/or known in the art, using the guidance supplied

herein.

The term "effective amount" of a CpG oligonucleotide refers to the amount necessary or sufficient to realize a desired biologic effect. For example, an effective amount of an oligonucleotide containing at least one unmethylated CpG for inducing mucosal immunity is that amount necessary to cause the development of IgA in response to an antigen upon exposure to the antigen. Combined with the teachings provided herein, by choosing among the various active compounds and weighing factors such as potency, relative bioavailability, patient body weight, severity of adverse side-effects and preferred mode of administration, an effective prophylactic or therapeutic treatment regimen can be planned which does not cause substantial toxicity and yet is entirely effective to treat the particular subject. The effective amount for any particular application can vary depending on such factors as the disease or condition being treated, the particular CpG oligonucleotide being administered (e.g. the number of unmethylated CpG motifs or their location in the nucleic acid), the antigen, the size of the subject, or the severity of the disease or condition. One of ordinary skill in the art can empirically determine the effective amount of a particular CpG oligonucleotide and antigen without necessitating undue experimentation.

Subject doses of the compounds described herein typically range from about 80 mg/day to 16,000 mg/day, more typically from about 800 mg/day to 8000 mg/day, and most typically from about 800 mg/day to 4000 mg/day. Stated in terms of subject body weight, typical dosages range from about 1 to 200 mg/kg/day, more typically from about 10 to 100 mg/kg/day, and most typically from about 10 to 50 mg/kg/day. Stated in terms of subject body surface areas, typical dosages range from about 40 to 8000 mg/m<sup>2</sup>/day, more typically from about 400 to 4000 mg/m<sup>2</sup>/day, and most typically from about 400 to 2000 mg/m<sup>2</sup>/day.

In some embodiments, particularly when the CpG is in a plasmid vector, at least 50 µg of the CpG is administered to a subject. In other embodiments at least 75 µg, 100 µg, 200 µg, 300 µg, 400 µg, 500 µg and every integer in between of the CpG is administered to the subject.

For any compound described herein the therapeutically effective amount can be initially determined from cell culture assays. For instance the effective amount of CpG oligonucleotide useful for inducing mucosal immunity can be assessed using the in vitro assays described above

with respect to stimulation index. The stimulation index can be used to determine an effective amount of the particular oligonucleotide for the particular subject, and the dosage can be adjusted upwards or downwards to achieve the desired levels in the subject. Therapeutically effective amounts can also be determined from animal models. A therapeutically effective dose can also  
5 be determined from human data for CpG oligonucleotides which have been tested in humans (human clinical trials have been initiated) and for compounds which are known to exhibit similar pharmacological activities, such as other mucosal adjuvants, e.g., LT and other antigens for vaccination purposes. The applied dose can be adjusted based on the relative bioavailability and potency of the administered compound. Adjusting the dose to achieve maximal efficacy based  
10 on the methods described above and other methods as are well-known in the art is well within the capabilities of the ordinarily skilled artisan.

The formulations of the invention are administered in pharmaceutically acceptable solutions, which may routinely contain pharmaceutically acceptable concentrations of salt, buffering agents, preservatives, compatible carriers, adjuvants, and optionally other therapeutic  
15 ingredients.

For use in therapy, an effective amount of the CpG oligonucleotide can be administered to a subject by any mode that delivers the oligonucleotide to a mucosal surface. "Administering" the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention may be accomplished by any means known to the skilled artisan. Preferred routes of administration include but are not limited to oral,  
20 intranasal, intratracheal, inhalation, ocular, vaginal, and rectal.

For oral administration, the compounds (i.e., CpG oligonucleotides, antigen, mucosal adjuvant) can be formulated readily by combining the active compound(s) with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers well known in the art. Such carriers enable the compounds of the invention to be formulated as tablets, pills, dragees, capsules, liquids, gels, syrups, slurries, suspensions and  
25 the like, for oral ingestion by a subject to be treated. Pharmaceutical preparations for oral use can be obtained as solid excipient, optionally grinding a resulting mixture, and processing the mixture of granules, after adding suitable auxiliaries, if desired, to obtain tablets or dragee cores. Suitable excipients are, in particular, fillers such as sugars, including lactose, sucrose, mannitol, or sorbitol; cellulose preparations such as, for example, maize starch, wheat starch, rice starch,  
30 potato starch, gelatin, gum tragacanth, methyl cellulose, hydroxypropylmethyl-cellulose, sodium

carboxymethylcellulose, and/or polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP). If desired, disintegrating agents may be added, such as the cross-linked polyvinyl pyrrolidone, agar, or alginic acid or a salt thereof such as sodium alginate. Optionally the oral formulations may also be formulated in saline or buffers for neutralizing internal acid conditions.

5 Dragee cores are provided with suitable coatings. For this purpose, concentrated sugar solutions may be used, which may optionally contain gum arabic, talc, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, carbopol gel, polyethylene glycol, and/or titanium dioxide, lacquer solutions, and suitable organic solvents or solvent mixtures. Dyestuffs or pigments may be added to the tablets or dragee coatings for identification or to characterize different combinations of active compound doses.

10 Pharmaceutical preparations which can be used orally include push-fit capsules made of gelatin, as well as soft, sealed capsules made of gelatin and a plasticizer, such as glycerol or sorbitol. The push-fit capsules can contain the active ingredients in admixture with filler such as lactose, binders such as starches, and/or lubricants such as talc or magnesium stearate and, optionally, stabilizers. In soft capsules, the active compounds may be dissolved or suspended in  
15 suitable liquids, such as fatty oils, liquid paraffin, or liquid polyethylene glycols. In addition, stabilizers may be added. Microspheres formulated for oral administration may also be used. Such microspheres have been well defined in the art. All formulations for oral administration should be in dosages suitable for such administration.

For buccal administration, the compositions may take the form of tablets or lozenges  
20 formulated in conventional manner.

For administration by inhalation, the compounds for use according to the present invention may be conveniently delivered in the form of an aerosol spray presentation from pressurized packs or a nebulizer, with the use of a suitable propellant, *e.g.*, dichlorodifluoromethane, trichlorofluoromethane, dichlorotetrafluoroethane, carbon dioxide or  
25 other suitable gas. In the case of a pressurized aerosol the dosage unit may be determined by providing a valve to deliver a metered amount. Capsules and cartridges of *e.g.* gelatin for use in an inhaler or insufflator may be formulated containing a powder mix of the compound and a suitable powder base such as lactose or starch.

The compounds, when it is desirable to deliver them systemically, may be formulated for

parenteral administration by injection, *e.g.*, by bolus injection or continuous infusion. Formulations for injection may be presented in unit dosage form, *e.g.*, in ampoules or in multi-dose containers, with an added preservative. The compositions may take such forms as suspensions, solutions or emulsions in oily or aqueous vehicles, and may contain formulatory  
5 agents such as suspending, stabilizing and/or dispersing agents.

Pharmaceutical formulations for parenteral administration include aqueous solutions of the active compounds in water-soluble form. Additionally, suspensions of the active compounds may be prepared as appropriate oily injection suspensions. Suitable lipophilic solvents or vehicles include fatty oils such as sesame oil, or synthetic fatty acid esters, such as ethyl oleate  
10 or triglycerides, or liposomes. Aqueous injection suspensions may contain substances which increase the viscosity of the suspension, such as sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, sorbitol, or dextran. Optionally, the suspension may also contain suitable stabilizers or agents which increase the solubility of the compounds to allow for the preparation of highly concentrated solutions.

Alternatively, the active compounds may be in powder form for constitution with a  
15 suitable vehicle, *e.g.*, sterile pyrogen-free water, before use.

The compounds may also be formulated in rectal or vaginal compositions such as suppositories or retention enemas, *e.g.*, containing conventional suppository bases such as cocoa butter or other glycerides.

In addition to the formulations described previously, the compounds may also be  
20 formulated as a depot preparation. Such long acting formulations may be formulated with suitable polymeric or hydrophobic materials (for example as an emulsion in an acceptable oil) or ion exchange resins, or as sparingly soluble derivatives, for example, as a sparingly soluble salt.

The pharmaceutical compositions also may comprise suitable solid or gel phase carriers or excipients. Examples of such carriers or excipients include but are not limited to calcium  
25 carbonate, calcium phosphate, various sugars, starches, cellulose derivatives, gelatin, and polymers such as polyethylene glycols.

Suitable liquid or solid pharmaceutical preparation forms are, for example, aqueous or saline solutions for inhalation, microencapsulated, encocleated, coated onto microscopic gold

particles, contained in liposomes, nebulized, aerosols, pellets for implantation into the skin, or dried onto a sharp object to be scratched into the skin. The pharmaceutical compositions also include granules, powders, tablets, coated tablets, (micro)capsules, suppositories, syrups, emulsions, suspensions, creams, drops or preparations with protracted release of active compounds, in whose preparation excipients and additives and/or auxiliaries such as disintegrants, binders, coating agents, swelling agents, lubricants, flavorings, sweeteners or solubilizers are customarily used as described above. The pharmaceutical compositions are suitable for use in a variety of drug delivery systems. For a brief review of present methods for drug delivery, see Langer, *Science* 249:1527-1533, 1990, which is incorporated herein by reference.

The CpG oligonucleotides and antigens may be administered per se (neat) or in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt. When used in medicine the salts should be pharmaceutically acceptable, but non-pharmaceutically acceptable salts may conveniently be used to prepare pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. Such salts include, but are not limited to, those prepared from the following acids: hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulphuric, nitric, phosphoric, maleic, acetic, salicylic, p-toluene sulphonic, tartaric, citric, methane sulphonic, formic, malonic, succinic, naphthalene-2-sulphonic, and benzene sulphonic. Also, such salts can be prepared as alkaline metal or alkaline earth salts, such as sodium, potassium or calcium salts of the carboxylic acid group.

Suitable buffering agents include: acetic acid and a salt (1-2% w/v); citric acid and a salt (1-3% w/v); boric acid and a salt (0.5-2.5% w/v); and phosphoric acid and a salt (0.8-2% w/v). Suitable preservatives include benzalkonium chloride (0.003-0.03% w/v); chlorobutanol (0.3-0.9% w/v); parabens (0.01-0.25% w/v) and thimerosal (0.004-0.02% w/v).

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention contain an effective amount of a CpG oligonucleotide and antigens optionally included in a pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier. The term "pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier" means one or more compatible solid or liquid filler, dilutants or encapsulating substances which are suitable for administration to a human or other vertebrate animal. The term "carrier" denotes an organic or inorganic ingredient, natural or synthetic, with which the active ingredient is combined to facilitate the application. The components of the pharmaceutical compositions also are capable of being commingled with the

compounds of the present invention, and with each other, in a manner such that there is no interaction which would substantially impair the desired pharmaceutical efficiency.

The CpG oligonucleotides or antigens useful in the invention may be delivered in mixtures with additional mucosal adjuvant(s) or antigen(s). A mixture may consist of several  
5 mucosal adjuvants in addition to the CpG oligonucleotide or several antigens.

A variety of administration routes are available. The particular mode selected will depend, of course, upon the particular adjuvants or antigen selected, the particular condition being treated and the dosage required for therapeutic efficacy. The methods of this invention, generally speaking, may be practiced using any mode of administration that is medically acceptable,  
10 meaning any mode that produces effective levels of an immune response without causing clinically unacceptable adverse effects. Preferred modes of administration are discussed above.

The compositions may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form and may be prepared by any of the methods well known in the art of pharmacy. All methods include the step of bringing the compounds into association with a carrier which constitutes one or more accessory  
15 ingredients. In general, the compositions are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing the compounds into association with a liquid carrier, a finely divided solid carrier, or both, and then, if necessary, shaping the product. Liquid dose units are vials or ampoules. Solid dose units are tablets, capsules and suppositories. For treatment of a patient, depending on activity of the compound, manner of administration, purpose of the immunization (i.e., prophylactic or  
20 therapeutic), nature and severity of the disorder, age and body weight of the patient, different doses may be necessary. The administration of a given dose can be carried out both by single administration in the form of an individual dose unit or else several smaller dose units. Multiple administration of doses at specific intervals of weeks or months apart is usual for boosting the antigen-specific responses.

25 Other delivery systems can include time-release, delayed release or sustained release delivery systems. Such systems can avoid repeated administrations of the compounds, increasing convenience to the subject and the physician. Many types of release delivery systems are available and known to those of ordinary skill in the art. They include polymer base systems such as poly(lactide-glycolide), copolyoxalates, polycaprolactones, polyesteramides, polyorthoesters,

polyhydroxybutyric acid, and polyanhydrides. Microcapsules of the foregoing polymers containing drugs are described in, for example, U.S. Patent 5,075,109. Delivery systems also include non-polymer systems that are: lipids including sterols such as cholesterol, cholesterol esters and fatty acids or neutral fats such as mono-di-and tri-glycerides; hydrogel release systems; 5 systatic systems; peptide based systems; wax coatings; compressed tablets using conventional binders and excipients; partially fused implants; and the like. Specific examples include, but are not limited to: (a) erosional systems in which an agent of the invention is contained in a form within a matrix such as those described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,452,775, 4,675,189, and 5,736,152, and (b) diffusional systems in which an active component permeates at a controlled rate from a 10 polymer such as described in U.S. Patent Nos. 3,854,480, 5,133,974 and 5,407,686. In addition, pump-based hardware delivery systems can be used, some of which are adapted for implantation.

The present invention is further illustrated by the following Examples, which in no way should be construed as further limiting. The entire contents of all of the references (including literature references, issued patents, published patent applications, and co-pending patent 15 applications) cited throughout this application are hereby expressly incorporated by reference.

## Examples

### **Example 1: Materials and Methods**

#### **1. Materials and Animals**

*Mice.* All experiments were carried out using female BALB/c mice aged 6-8 weeks with 20 5-10 mice per experimental or control group. For intranasal immunizations, mice were lightly anaesthetized with Halothane® (Halocarbon Laboratories, River Edge, NJ).

*Adjuvants:* Mice were immunized by IN administration of 1 µg HBsAg (plasma-derived HBV S protein, ad subtype, Genzyme Diagnostics, San Carlos, CA), alone or combined with 1 or 10 µg of CT (purified from *Vibrio cholerae*, Sigma, St. Louis, MO), LT (purified from 25 *Escherichia coli*, Sigma), CTB (purified from *Vibrio cholerae*, Sigma), LTK63 (mutant of LT bearing an Ser → Lys at position 63, generously provided by Dr. Rino Rappuoli, IRIS, Chiron S.p.A., Italy) and/or CpG ODN (5'-TCCATGACCGTTCCTGACCGTT-3', CpG ODN #1826 SEQ ID NO. 90) or non-CpG control ODN (5'TCCAGGACTTCTCTCAGGTT-3', CpG ODN #1982



SEQ ID NO. 91) (Hybridon Specialty Products, Milford, MA). The antigen and adjuvant(s) were made up to a total volume of 150  $\mu$ l with 0.15 M NaCl, and were administered by IN inhalation. ODN were resuspended in 10 mM Tris (pH 7.0), 1 mM EDTA for storage at +4°C before dilution into saline for immunization. LPS level in ODN was undetectable (< 1 ng/mg) by Limulus assay  
5 (Whittaker Bioproducts, Walkersville, MD).

## 2. Mucosal Immunization

Each animal was immunized with 1 or 10 Fg plasma-derived HBV S protein (HBsAg, ad subtype, Genzyme Diagnostics, San Carlos, CA), which was administered alone or in combination with 1 or 10  $\mu$ g of CT or LT or derivative of them and/or CpG oligonucleotide  
10 #1826. The derivatives of CT were the B subunit of CT (CTB). The detoxified derivatives of LT were all produced by genetic mutations that affected the A subunit or enzymatic activity and included LTK63. All vaccines were delivered in a total volume of 150  $\mu$ l, which was applied as droplets directly over both external nares of lightly anaesthetized mice. Some mice were boosted in the identical manner at 8 weeks after prime. All experimental groups contained 5 or 10 mice.

## 3. Collection of samples

Plasma: Plasma was recovered from mice at various times after immunization (1, 2, 4 and 8 wk post-prime and 1, 2 and 4 wk post-boost) by retro-orbital bleeding and stored at -20°C until assayed.

*Fecal pellets:* Fecal pellets were collected from mice at various times after immunization  
20 (1, 2, 4 and 8 wk post-prime and 1, 2 and 4 wk post-boost). Mice were isolated in individual cages without bedding for a 24 hr period, following which fecal pellets were collected and weighed into 0.1 mg aliquots. One ml TBS (0.05 M Tris-HCl, 0.15 M NaCl, pH 7.5) and 0.1 Fg sodium azide (Sigma) were added per 0.1 mg of fecal material. Samples were allowed to rehydrate for 30 min at RT, then were centrifuged at 6000 rpm for 15 min. to remove fecal debris  
25 and supernatants were collected and stored at -20°C until assayed for S-IgA by ELISA.

Lung washes: Lung washes were carried out on mice 4 wk after primary immunization or boost. A 0.33 cc Insulin syringe with a 29G1/2 needle attached (Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ) was used for carrying out lung washes. One ml TBS was drawn into the syringe and a length of polyethylene (PE) tubing that was 1 cm longer than the needle was attached (PE20,

ID = 0.38 mm, Becton Dickinson). The mouse was killed by anesthetic overdose and the trachea was immediately exposed through an anterior midline incision made using fine-tipped surgical scissors (Fine Science Tools Inc., North Vancouver, BC). A small incision was then made in the trachea and a clamp (Fine Science Tools Inc., North Vancouver, BC) was placed above it. The PE tubing was passed a few mm down the trachea through the incision and a second clamp was placed just below the incision to hold the PE tubing in place in the trachea. The TBS solution was slowly instilled in the lungs then withdrawn three times (80% recovery expected). Recovered samples were centrifuge at 13,000 rpm for 7 min., and the supernatants were collected and stored at -20E C until assayed by ELISA.

#### 4. Evaluation of immune responses

*Systemic humoral response:* HBsAg-specific antibodies (anti-HBs) in the mouse plasma were detected and quantified by end-point dilution ELISA assay (in triplicate) for individual animals as described previously (Davis *et al.*, 1998). Briefly, 96-well polystyrene plates (Corning) coated overnight (RT) with plasma derived HBsAg particles (as used for immunization) (100 FI of 1 Fg/ml in 0.05 M sodium carbonate-bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.6) were incubated with the plasma for 1 hr at 37 E C. Captured antibodies were then detected with horseradish peroxidase (HRP)-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG, IgG1 or IgG2a (1:4000 in PBS-Tween, 10% PBS: 100 FI/well; Southern Biotechnology Inc., Birmingham, AL), followed by addition of o-phenylenediamine dihydrochloride solution (OPD, Sigma), 100 FI/well, for 30 min at RT in the dark. The reaction was stopped by the addition of 4 N H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, 50 FI/well.

End-point dilution titers were defined as the highest plasma dilution that resulted in an absorbance value (OD 450) two times greater than that of non-immune plasma, with a cut-off value of 0.05. Anti-HBs titers of responding mice (endpoint titers > 10) were expressed as means SEM of individual animal values, which were themselves the average of triplicate assays.

*Mucosal humoral response:* This was carried out on fecal supernatants or recovered lung washes as for plasma (above) except samples were incubated on coated plates for 2 hr at 37°C and captured antibodies were detected with HRP-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgA (1:1000 in PBS-Tween, 10% PBS: 100 FI/well; Southern Biotechnology Inc). Non-immune fecal pellet or lung wash solutions were used to determine negative control values. For lung wash solutions, anti-HBs endpoint dilution titers were reported (as described above), whereas for fecal pellet solutions.

absorbance values (OD 450) greater than that of non-immune fecal pellet solution were calculated and expressed as mean SEM of individual OD 450 values, which were themselves the average of triplicate assays.

*Evaluation of CTL responses:* Spleens were removed from mice 4 wk after primary immunization or boost. *In vitro* assay of HBsAg-specific cytolytic activity was carried out as previously described (Davis *et al.*, 1998). In brief, single cell suspensions were prepared and suspended in tissue culture medium (RPMI 1640, 10 % FBS, Life Technologies, Grand Island, NY, supplemented with penicillin-streptomycin solution, 1000 U/ml, 1mg/ml final concentrations respectively, Sigma). Splenocytes ( $3 \times 10^7$ ) were co-cultured for 5 days (37EC, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>) with  $1.5 \times 10^6$  syngeneic HBsAg-expressing stimulator cells (P815-preS, generously provided by F. V. Chisari, Scripps Institute, La Jolla, CA) that had been previously inactivated by irradiation (20 000 rad). Effector cells were harvested, washed, serially diluted and cultured with  $5 \times 10^4$  <sup>51</sup>Cr-labeled HBsAg-expressing target cells (P815S) in round bottom 96-well culture plates (37EC, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>, 4 hr). Supernatant (100 Fl) was removed for radiation (gamma) counting. Spontaneous release was determined by incubating target cells without effector cells and total release by addition of 100 Fl 2 N HCl to the target cells. The percent lysis was calculated as  $[(\text{experimental release} - \text{spontaneous release}) / (\text{total release} - \text{spontaneous release})] \times 100$ . The percent specific lysis was calculated as % lysis with P815S - % lysis with P815 cells. CTL activity for responding mice [% specific lysis > 10 at effector:target (E:T) of 25:1] were expressed as mean SEM of individual animal values, which were themselves the average of triplicate assays.

## 5. Statistical analysis

Data were analyzed using the GraphPAD InStat program (Graph PAD Software, San Diego). The statistical significance of the difference between two groups was determined from the means and standard deviations by Student's 2-tailed *t*-test and between three or more groups by 1-factor analysis of variance (ANOVA) followed by Tukey's test for multiple range testing. Differences were considered to be not significant with  $p > 0.05$ .

**Example 2. Systemic humoral responses after mucosal immunization**

BALB/c mice immunized on a single occasion by IN inhalation of HBsAg without adjuvant did not have any detectable anti-HBs IgG antibodies in their plasma with 1 µg HBsAg and only extremely low titers (<20) in a few mice with 10 µg of antigen (Figure 1).

5 In contrast, titers of anti-HBs IgG were considerably greater when HBsAg was administered in combination with either CpG oligonucleotide or CT as adjuvant (Figure 1). With a low dose of adjuvant (1 µg) and either a low or high dose of antigen (1 or 10 µg HBsAg), CpG oligonucleotide was found to be equivalent to CT for induction of plasma anti-HBs IgG ( $p = 0.73$  with 1 µg HBsAg, and 0.13 with 10 µg HBsAg). CpG oligonucleotide and CT were also  
10 equivalent with a high dose of adjuvant (10 µg) and high dose of antigen (10 µg HBsAg) ( $p = 0.08$ ), however with a lower dose of antigen, the higher dose of CT was superior to the CpG oligonucleotide ( $p = 0.01$ ) (Figure 1). These results indicate that CpG oligonucleotide is essentially equal to CT for enhancement of systemic immune responses with mucosal delivery (IN) of a protein antigen.

15 A combined low dose of CpG oligonucleotide and CT (1 µg of each) gave a better systemic humoral response than 10 µg CpG oligonucleotide alone ( $p = 0.01$ ) and was equal to that with 10 µg CT alone ( $p = 0.22$ ), when added to a 1 µg dose of HBsAg. Furthermore, with a 10 µg dose of HBsAg, the combined adjuvants (1 µg each) induced anti-HBs IgG titers as high as those with 10 µg of either adjuvant alone (CT,  $p = 0.27$ ; CpG oligonucleotide,  $p = 0.09$ ) (Figure  
20 1). These finding indicate that CpG oligonucleotide can act synergistically with CT when administered to mucosal tissue to induce strong systemic humoral responses, and thereby permit a lower dose of adjuvant to be administered.

Antibody titers were further increased about 10-fold by boosting at 8 wks. Post-boost titers of plasma IgG were equivalent for CT and CpG oligonucleotide used alone, and were 5-10  
25 times higher than that with both adjuvants together (Figure 2). These results indicate that the adjuvant effect of CpG oligonucleotide alone or in combination with CT can be enhanced by boosting.

Evaluation of plasma for IgG antibody isotypes after a single mucosal immunization showed predominantly IgG1 antibodies (Th2-like) with CT and mixed IgG1/IgG2a antibodies  
30 (Th0) with CpG oligonucleotide alone or in combination with CT. The proportion of IgG2a

isotype of antibodies, was about 10-times greater with CpG ODN than CT, indicating a greater Th1 influence of CpG ODN compared to CT. Furthermore, the combination of CpG ODN and CT gave a 50-times higher IgG2a:IgG1 ratio than CT alone (Figure 3). Following boost, anti-HBs were still predominantly IgG1 with CT and mixed with CpG oligonucleotide. although in the latter case, the proportion of IgG2a was now higher. Surprisingly, plasma anti-HBs after boost with CpG oligonucleotide and CT were now predominantly IgG2a (Th-1 like) (Figure 3). These findings indicate that CpG oligonucleotide as a mucosal adjuvant stimulates a Th1-like response, even in the presence of a strong Th2-like adjuvant like CT.

Similar results were found when LT was used in place of CT (Figure 7, Tables 2 and 3). CT and LT, which are closely related with considerable structural and functional homology, are both too toxic for use in humans. However there are a number of derivations of CT and LT that retain some adjuvant activity yet are much less toxic. One example is the B-subunit of CT (CTB) which is non-toxic since the toxicity is associated with the A subunit. Another example is LTK63, a genetically detoxified mutant of LT with no toxic enzymatic activity. Although these adjuvants are being used in human clinical trials, neither was as strong as CpG ODN for induction of systemic immunity (serum IgG) when each was used at 1  $\mu$ g (Figure 7). There was also a synergistic effect when CpG ODN and CTB or LTK63 were used together, however this was more noticeable for Th1-bias than for strength of the antibody response (Figure 7 and Table 2).

### **Example 3: Systemic CTL responses after mucosal immunization**

Only low levels of CTL were induced with HBsAg alone, however the addition of either CpG oligonucleotide or CT significantly increased HBsAg-specific CTL activity. CTL responses were equivalent for CT and CpG oligonucleotide, regardless of dose. However, a combination of CT and CpG oligonucleotide (1  $\mu$ g of each) increased CTL responses approximately two-fold. (Figure 4).

**Example 4: Mucosal humoral responses after mucosal immunization**

No anti-HBs S-IgA were detected in lung washes of mice immunized with 1 or 10 µg HBsAg alone. Nor were anti-HBs IgA detected with the low dose of antigen combined with a low dose (1 µg) of either CpG oligonucleotide or CT or with a high dose of CpG oligonucleotide; only  
5 low titers were detected with low dose antigen and high dose CT (Figure 5). However when low doses of both CpG oligonucleotide and CT (1 µg each) were used together with the low dose of antigen, significant levels of HBsAg-specific S-IgA could be detected in lung washes (Figure 5).

With a higher antigen dose (10 µg), S-IgA was detected in lung washes of mice administered the either low or high doses of CT and/or CpG oligonucleotide. Titers of IgA were  
10 significantly higher with 1 µg of the two adjuvants together than with 10 µg of CT or CpG oligonucleotide alone ( $p = 0.0003$  and  $<0.0001$  respectively) (Figure 5). IgA titers increased approximately ten-fold after boosting with both adjuvants. Thus CpG oligonucleotide can induce specific local mucosal immunity against antigen administered intranasally. Furthermore, similar to as was found for systemic response (above) CpG oligonucleotide acts in a synergistic fashion  
15 with CT for the induction of mucosal immunity.

IgA was also detected in fecal pellets of mice immunized with HBsAg and 10 µg CpG oligonucleotide. In contrast, only very low levels were detected in mice immunized with HBsAg in combination with CT (1 or 10 µg) (Figure 6). Thus, CpG oligonucleotide can induce mucosal immunity at distant mucosal sites.

**Example 5: Mucosal and Systemic Immune Response to other Mucosal Adjuvants*****Systemic immune responses***

IN delivery of HBsAg (1 µg) without adjuvant did not induce detectable anti-HBs IgG antibodies in the plasma of any mice (0/15). In contrast, high titers of anti-HBs IgG were induced  
25 in all mice when HBsAg was administered in combination with CpG, CT or LT as adjuvant (Figure 7, Table 2). At a low dose (1 µg) LT, CT and CpG gave equivalent anti-HBs IgG titers ( $p = 0.22$ ). At a high dose (10 µg) CT and LT gave higher titers than CpG, however 5/10 mice receiving this dose of LT died within 10 days. No detectable anti-HBs IgG was detected with a low dose (1 µg) of CTB or LTK63, however a high dose (10 µg) of CTB gave low anti-HBs IgG

endpoint ELISA titers and a high dose (10 µg) of LTK63 gave as good levels of anti-HBs IgG as a high dose (10 µg) of CpG ( $p = 0.97$ ) (Figure 7, Tables 2 and 3).

When used together, CpG and either LT or CT (1 µg each) appeared to have a synergistic effect since anti-HBs titers were 5 to 10 times higher than with any one of the three adjuvants alone (Figure 7). Indeed, CpG plus LT (1 µg each) gave a better response than 10 µg of CpG or LT alone ( $p = 0.007$ ,  $0.015$  respectively) and the response with CpG plus CT (1 µg each) was equal to that with 10 µg CT alone ( $p = 0.65$ ). In contrast, there was no synergistic effect with LTK63 plus CpG (1 µg each) for anti-HBs IgG titers, which were equivalent to those with 1 µg CpG alone ( $p = 0.40$ ). Surprisingly, CTB plus CpG (1 µg each) gave lower anti-HBs titers than 1 µg CpG alone ( $p = 0.007$ ) (Figure 7). Adjuvant effects with CpG ODN were due to the CpG motif rather than a non-specific effect of the ODN backbone since mice immunized with 1 µg of HBsAg plus 10 µg of non-CpG ODN had no (7/10) or very low (3/10) titers of anti-HBs IgG antibodies (data not shown).

Antibodies were predominantly IgG1 (Th2-like) with CT, CTB and LT and mixed IgG1/IgG2a (Th1/Th2) with LTK63. At a low dose (1 µg) responses with CpG were mixed IgG1/IgG2a (Th1/Th2), but at a higher dose (10 µg) were more Th1 (IgG2a >> IgG1). Responses were mixed Th1/Th2 with CT/CpG or CTB/CpG and more Th1 with LT/CpG. At a low dose (1 µg each) LTK63/CpG responses were Th1/Th2, but at a higher dose (10 µg each) were more Th1 (Table 3). Thus coadministration of CpG with other adjuvants shifted responses towards a more Th1-like response as indicated by a greater proportion of IgG2a antibodies.

### *Mucosal immune responses*

When adjuvants were used alone, only mice receiving LT or LTK63 had detectable IgA in lung washes, however when CpG ODN was also included with CT or LT a greater number of animals responded or titers were higher than with comparable doses alone, suggesting a synergistic effect. CpG alone did not induce IgA. Neither did CTB, alone or combined with CpG (Table 3).

Only a few adjuvants on their own (LT and CpG) induced IgA in the feces, and then only in some animals. No significant IgA was detected with CT, CTB, LTK63 or non-CpG ODN. CpG and LT together resulted in IgA in the feces of a greater proportion of animals than either adjuvant alone suggesting an additive or synergistic effect. No such effects were evident with other combinations (Table 3).

Table 2: Effect of adjuvant on HBsAg-specific antibody isotypes

Adjuvant <sup>a</sup>	dose (μg)	Anti-HBs response		
		IgG2a <sup>b</sup>	IgG1 <sup>b</sup>	IgG2a:IgG1 <sup>c</sup>
none	-	0	0	N/A <sup>d</sup>
CT	1	36	1632	0.02
CT	10	406	3849	0.1
CTB	1	0	0	N/A
CTB	10	6	59	0.1
LT	1	226	6457	0.04
LT	10	895	2024	0.44
LTK63	1	0	0	N/A
LTK63	10	231	455	0.5
CpG ODN	1	146	403	0.4
CpG ODN	10	549	41	13.4
control ODN	1	0	0	N/A
control ODN	10	0	0	N/A
CT + CpG ODN	1 each	3376	2374	1.4
CTB + CpG ODN	1 each	0	0	N/A
LT + CpG ODN	1 each	6268	1438	4.4
LTK63 + CpG ODN	1 each	185	272	0.7
CT + control ODN	1 each	402	5087	0.08
CT + CpG ODN	10 each	= <sup>e</sup>	=	=
CTB + CpG ODN	10 each	227	208	1.1
LT + CpG ODN	10 each	=	=	=
LTK63 + CpG ODN	10 each	3170	413	7.7



Table 3. Effect of adjuvant on HBsAg-specific IgA responses

	Adjuvant <sup>a</sup>	dose ( $\mu$ g)	Anti-HBs response <sup>b</sup>			
			lung		fecal	
			IgA <sup>c</sup>	no. of responders	IgA <sup>d</sup>	no. of responders
5	none	-	0	0	0	0
	CT	1	0	0	0	0
	CT	10	0	0	0	0
	CTB	1	0	0	0	0
	CTB	10	0	0	0	0
10	LT	1	160 $\pm$ 68	5	100, 200	2
	LT	10	17 $\pm$ 5	3/3 (2 dead)	200 $\pm$ 50	3/3 (2 dead)
	LTK63	1	0	0	0	0
	LTK63	10	26 $\pm$ 6	4	0	0
	CpG ODN	1	0	0	100	1
15	CpG ODN	10	0	0	0	0
	control ODN	1	0	0	0	0
	control ODN	10	0	0	0	0
	CT + CpG ODN	1 each	17, 49	2	120	1
	CTB + CpG ODN	1 each	0	0	0	0
20	LT + CpG ODN	1 each	232 $\pm$ 34	5	150 $\pm$ 20	4
	LTK63 + CpG ODN	1 each	14	1	0	0
	CT + control ODN	1 each	0	0	0	0
	CT + CpG ODN	10 each	= <sup>e</sup>	=	=	=
	CTB + CpG ODN	10 each	17	1	0	0
25	LT + CpG ODN	10 each	=	=	=	=
	LTK63 + CpG ODN	10 each	28 $\pm$ 46	3/4	130	1/4

Table 4: summary of effects of different prime/boost strategies on HBsAg-specific immune responses

PRIME	BOOST	IgA			IgG	CTL	TCP
		L	S	F			
IM Ag + alum + CpG	none				X		X
	IM Ag + alum + CpG			X	X	X	X
	IN Ag	X	X		X	X	X
	IN Ag + CT	X	X		X	X	X
	IN Ag + CpG	X	X		X	X	X
IN Ag + CT + CpG		X	X	X	X	X	X
IN Ag					X		
IN Ag + CT				X	X	X	X
IN Ag + CpG	IM Ag + alum + CpG				X	X	X
IN Ag + CT + CpG		X	X	X	X	X	X
IN Ag + CT + CpG	IN Ag + CT + CpG	X	X	X	X	X	X
IN Ag + CT + CpG	none				X		X

L: lung, cut-off GMT = 10

S: saliva, cut-off OD<sub>450</sub> × 10<sup>3</sup> = 100F: fecal, cut-off OD<sub>450</sub> × 10<sup>3</sup> = 100

CTL, cut-off 20% at E:T 100:1

TCP, cut-off 2500cpm

Ag: 1 µg HBsAg

CpG: 1 µg #1826, CT: 1 µg, alum: 25 µg

**REFERENCES**

- Alpar HO, Ozsoy Y, Bowen J, Eyles JE, Conway BR, Williamson ED. Potential of particulate carriers for the mucosal delivery of DNA vaccines. Biochemical Society Transactions  
5 1997;25(2):337S.
- Ballas, Z. K., W. L. Rasmussen, and A. M. Krieg. 1996. Induction of natural killer activity in murine and human cells by CpG motifs in oligodeoxynucleotides and bacterial DNA. *J. Immunol.* 157: 1840.
- Bird, A. P. CpG islands as gene markers in the vertebrate nucleus. 1987. Trends in Genetics  
10 3:342.
- Bowersock TL, Shalaby WS, Levy M, Samuels ML, Lallone R, White MR, Borie DL, Lehmeier J, Park K. Evaluation of an orally administered vaccine, using hydrogels containing bacterial exotoxins of *Pasteurella haemolytica*, in cattle. Am. J. Vet. Res. 1994; 55: 502-9.
- Bueler H and Mulligan RC. Induction of antigen-specific tumor immunity by genetic and cellular  
15 vaccines against MAGE: enhanced tumor protection by coexpression of granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor and B7-1. 1996; 2: 545-555.
- Chace, J. H., N. A. Hooker, K. L. Mildestein, A. M. Krieg, and J. S. Cowdery. 1997. Bacterial DNA-induced NK cell IFN- $\gamma$  production is dependent on macrophage secretion of IL-12. *Clin. Immunol. Immunopath.*, 84:185.
- 20 Chow YH, Huang WL, Chi WK, Chu YD, Tao MH. Improvement of hepatitis B virus DNA vaccines by plasmids coexpressing hepatitis B surface antigen and interleukin-2. Journal of Virology 1997;71(1):169-78.
- Cong Y, Weaver CT, Elson CO. The mucosal adjuvanticity of cholera toxin involves enhancement of costimulatory activity by selective up-regulation of B7.2 expression. J.  
25 Immunol. 1997; 159: 5301-8.
- Constant SL, Bottomly K. Induction of Th1 and Th2 CD4+ T cell responses: the alternative approaches. Ann. Rev. Immunol. 1997; 15: 297-322.
- Cowdery, J. S., J. H. Chace, and A. M. Krieg. 1996. Bacterial DNA induces in vivo interferon- $\gamma$  production by NK cells and increases sensitivity to endotoxin. *J. Immunol.* 156:4570.

Davis HL, Weeratna R, Waldschmidt TJ, Schorr J and Krieg AM. CpG DNA is a potent adjuvant in mice immunized with recombinant hepatitis B surface antigen. *J. Immunol.* 1998; 160: 870-876.

5 de Haan L. Verweij WR. Feil IK. Lijnema TH. Hol WG. Agsteribbe E. Wilschut J. Mutants of the *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin with reduced ADP-ribosylation activity or no activity retain the immunogenic properties of the native holotoxin. *Infect. Immun.* 1996; 64: 5413-6.

10 Delong R. Stephenson K. Loftus T. Fisher M. Alahari S. Nolting A. Juliano RL. Characterization of complexes of oligonucleotides with polyamidoamine starburst dendrimers and effects on intracellular delivery. *J. Pharmac. Sci.* 1997; 86: 762-4.

Douce G. Turcotte C. Cropley I. Roberts M. Pizza M. Domenghini M. Rappuoli R. Dougan G. Mutants of *Escherichia coli* heat-labile toxin lacking ADP-ribosyltransferase activity act as nontoxic, mucosal adjuvants. *PNAS.* 1995; 92: 1644-8.

15 Eldridge J, Staas JK., Meulbroek JA., McGhee JR. Biodegradable microspheres as a vaccine delivery system. *Molecular Immunology* 1991; 28: 287-294.

Gallichan WS, Rosenthal KL. Specific secretory immune responses in the female genital tract following intranasal immunization with a recombinant adenovirus expressing glycoprotein B of herpes simplex virus. *Vaccine* 1995;13(16):1589-95.

20 Geissler M, Gesien A, Tokushige K, Wands JR. Enhancement of cellular and humoral immune responses to hepatitis C virus core protein using DNA-based vaccines augmented with cytokine-expressing plasmids. *J Immunol* 1997;158(3):1231-7.

Gregoriadis G. Engineering liposomes for drug delivery: progress and problems. *Trends Biotech.* 1995; 13: 527-537.

25 Halpern, M. D., R. J. Kurlander, and D. S. Pisetsky. 1996. Bacterial DNA induces murine interferon- $\gamma$  production by stimulation of interleukin-12 and tumor necrosis factor- $\alpha$ . *Cell. Immunol.* 167:72.

Haneberg B, Kendall D, Amerongen HM, Apter FM, Kraehenbuhl J-P, and Neutra MR. Induction of specific immunoglobulin A in the small intestine, colon-rectum, and vagina measured by a new method for collection of secretions from local mucosal surfaces. *Infect. Immun.*

1994; 15-23.

Hogg JC. The pathology of asthma. *APMIS*. 1997; 105: 10: 735-45.

Holmgren J. Lycke N. Czerkinsky C. Cholera toxin and cholera B subunit as oral-mucosal adjuvant and antigen vector systems. *Vaccine* 1993;11:1179-1184.

5     Hornquist E. Lycke N. Cholera toxin adjuvant greatly promotes antigen priming of T cells. *Eur. J. Immunol.* 1993; 23: 2136-43.

Kay AB. TH2-type cytokines in asthma. *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.* 1996; 796: 1-8.

Kim JJ, Ayyavoo V, Bagarazzi ML, Chattergoon MA, Dang K, Wang B, Boyer JD, and Weiner D B. In vivo engineering of a cellular immune response by coadministration of IL-12 expression vector with a DNA immunogen. *J. Immunol.* 1997;158: 816-26.

10     Klinman DM, Yamshchikov G, and Ishigatsubo Y. Contribution of CpG motifs to the immunogenicity of DNA vaccines. *J. Immunol.* 1997; 158: 3635-3659.

Klinman, D., A. -K. Yi, S. L. Beaucage, J. Conover, and A. M. Krieg. 1996. CpG motifs expressed by bacterial DNA rapidly induce lymphocytes to secrete IL-6, IL-12 and IFN. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:2879.

15     Krieg, A. M., A. -K. Yi, S. Matson, T. J. Waldschmidt, G. A. Bishop, R. Teasdale, G. Koretzky, and D. Klinman. CpG motifs in bacterial DNA trigger direct B-cell activation. 1995. *Nature* 374:546.

Krieg, A. M. 1996An innate immune defense mechanism based on the recognition of CpG motifs in microbial DNA. *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 128:128.

20     Kukowska-Latallo JF, Bielinska AU, Johnson J, Spindler R, Tomalia DA, Baker JR Jr. Efficient transfer of genetic material into mammalian cells using Starburst polyamidoamine dendrimers. *PNAS*. 1996; 93: 4897-902.

Lamm ME, Mazanec MB, Nedrud JG, Kaetzel CS. Mechanisms of IgA-mediated mucosal defense. *Vaccine Res.* 1992;1:169-173.

25     Lycke N, Tsuji T, and Holmgren J. The adjuvant effect of *Vibrio cholerae* and *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxins is linked to their ADP-ribosyltransferase activity. *Eur. J. immunol.* 1992; 22: 2277-2281.

- Maloy KJ, Donachie AM, Mowat AM. Induction of Th1 and Th2 CD4+ T cell responses by oral or parenteral immunization with ISCOMS. *Eur. J. Immunol.* 1995; 25: 2835-41.
- Mannino RJ and Gould-Fogerite S. Lipid matrix-based vaccines for mucosal and systemic immunization. In: *Vaccine Design: The subunit and adjuvant approach.* (ed. Powell MF and Newman MJ) Plenum Press, New York. 1995; 363-387.
- McGhee JR, Mestecky J, Dertzbaugh MT, Eldridge JH, Hirasawa M, Kiyono H. The mucosal immune system: from fundamental concepts to vaccine development. *Vaccine* 1992;10:75-88.
- Messina, J. P., G. S. Gilkeson, and D. S. Pisetsky. 1991. Stimulation of in vitro murine lymphocyte proliferation by bacterial DNA. *J. Immunol.* 147:1759.
- Mestecky J, McGhee JR. Prospects for human mucosal vaccines. In: Ciardi JE, ed. *Genetically Engineered vaccines.* New York: Plenum Press, 1992:13-23.
- O'Hagan DT. Oral immunization and the common mucosal immune system. In: O'Hagan DT, ed. *Novel Delivery Systems for Oral Vaccines.* Boca Raton: CRC Press, 1994:1-24.
- O'Hagan DT, Rahman D, Jeffery H, Sharif S, Challacombe SJ. Controlled release microparticles for oral immunization. *Int. J. Pharm.* 1994; 108: 133-139.
- Pizza M, Fontana MR, Giuliani MM, Domenighini M, Magagnoli C, Giannelli V, Nucci D, Hol W, Manetti R, Rappuoli R. A genetically detoxified derivative of heat-labile *Escherichia coli* enterotoxin induces neutralizing antibodies against the A subunit. *J. Exp. Med.* 1994; 180: 2147-53.
- Rappuoli R, Douce G, Dougan G, Pizza M. Genetic detoxification of bacterial toxins: a new approach to vaccine development. *Int Arch Allergy Immunol.* 1995; 108: 327-33.
- Sato Y, Roman M, Tighe H, Lee D, Corr M, Nguyen MD, Silverman GJ, Lotz M, Carson DA, Raz E. Immunostimulatory DNA sequences necessary for effective intradermal gene immunization. *Science.* 1996; 273: 352-4.
- Schirmbeck R, Melber, K, Kuhröber A, Janowicz ZA and Reimann J. Immunization with soluble hepatitis B virus surface protein elicits murine H-2 class I-restricted CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses *in vivo*. *J. Immunol.* 1994; 152: 1110-1119.
- Sjolander A, Lovgren Bengtsson K, Johansson M, Morein B. Kinetics, localization and isotype

profile of antibody responses to immune stimulating complexes (ISCOMS) containing human influenza virus envelope glycoproteins. *Scand. J. Immunol.* 1996; 43:164-72.

Sjolander A. van't Land B. Lovgren Bengtsson K. Iscoms containing purified Quillaja saponins upregulate both Th1-like and Th2-like immune responses. *Cell. Immunol.* 1997; 177: 69-76.

Snider DP. The mucosal adjuvant activities of ADP-ribosylating bacterial enterotoxins. *Crit. Rev. Immunol.* 1995; 15: 317-48.

Spangler BD. Structure and function of cholera toxin and the related *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin. *Microbiol. Rev.* 1992; 56: 622-647.

10 Staats HF, Jackson RJ, Marinaro M, Takahashi I, Kiyono H, McGhee JR. Mucosal immunity to infection with implications for vaccine development. *Current Biology.* 1994;6:572-583.

Tokunaga, T, H. Yamamoto, S. Shimada, H. Abe, T. Fukuda, Y. Fujisawa, Y. Furutani, O. Yano, T. Kataoka, T. Sudo, N. Makiguchi, and T. Suganuma. 1984. Antitumor activity of deoxyribonucleic acid fraction from mycobacterium bovis GCG. I. Isolation, physicochemical characterization, and antitumor activity. *JNCI* 72:955.

Tsuji T, Hamajima K, Ishii N, Aoki I, Fukushima J, Xin KQ, Kawamoto S, Sasaki S, Matsunaga K, Ishigatsubo Y, Tani K, Okubo T, and Okuda K. Immunomodulatory effects of a plasmid expressing B7-2 on human immunodeficiency virus-1-specific cell-mediated immunity induced by a plasmid encoding the viral antigen. *Eur. J. Immunol.* 1997; 27: 782-7.

20 Valodas, J., Davies, J. K., Wright, P.J., Strugnell R.A. Intranasal immunization with liposomes induces strong mucosal immune responses in mice. *Eur. J. Immunol.* 1995; 25: 969-975.

Weeratna R, Brazolot Millan CL, Krieg AM, and Davis HL. Reduction of antigen expression from DNA vaccines by co-administered oligodeoxynucleotides. *Anti. Nucl. Acid Res.*(in press).

25 Yamamoto, S., T. Yamamoto, S. Shimada, E. Kuramoto, O. Yano, T. Kataoka, and T. Tokunaga. 1992. DNA from bacteria, but not from vertebrates, induces interferons, activates natural killer cells and inhibits tumor growth. *Microbiol. Immunol.* 36:983.

Yi, A.-K., Cowdery, J.S., J.H. Chace, and A.M. Krieg. 1996. IFN- $\gamma$  promotes IL-6 and Ig-M secretion in response to CpG motifs in bacterial DNA and ODN. *J. Immunol.*, 156:558.

The foregoing written specification is considered to be sufficient to enable one skilled in the art to practice the invention. The present invention is not to be limited in scope by examples provided, since the examples are intended as a single illustration of one aspect of the invention and other functionally equivalent embodiments are within the scope of the invention. Various  
5 modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and fall within the scope of the appended claims. The advantages and objects of the invention are not necessarily encompassed by each embodiment of the invention.

We claim:

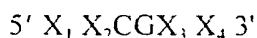
10



**CLAIMS**

1. A method for inducing a mucosal immune response, comprising:

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal  
5 immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following  
formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the mucosal immune response, and wherein  
10 the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject is actively exposed to the antigen.

3. The method of claim 2, wherein the antigen is delivered to a mucosal surface.

4. The method of claim 2, wherein the antigen is administered concurrently with the  
oligonucleotide.

15 5. The method of claim 2, wherein the antigen is delivered in conjunction with a colloidal  
dispersion system.

6. The method of claim 5, wherein the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the  
group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-  
based systems.

20 7. The method of claim 6, wherein the lipid-based system is selected from the group  
consisting of oil-in-water emulsions, micelles, mixed micelles, and liposomes.

8. The method of claim 2, further comprising the step of administering a non-  
oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen.

9. The method of claim 8, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected  
25 from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives

of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers, and ISCOMS.

10. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject is passively exposed to the antigen.

5 11. The method of claim 10, wherein the subject is a subject at risk of developing an allergic reaction.

12. The method of claim 10, wherein the subject is a subject at risk of developing an infectious disease.

13. The method of claim 11, wherein the subject is at risk of developing cancer.

10 14. The method of claim 1, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

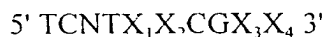
15. The method of claim 1, wherein the oligonucleotide includes a phosphate backbone modification which is a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification.

16. The method of claim 15, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

15 17. The method of claim 15, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 3' end of the oligonucleotide.

18. The method of claim 1, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, 20 TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA.

19. The method of claim 1, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about 25 0-25 nucleotides.

20. The method of claim 1, wherein the antigen is selected from the group consisting of cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, allergens, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites.

5 21. The method of claim 1, wherein the antigen is an allergen.

22. The method of claim 1, wherein the antigen is derived from an infectious organism selected from the group consisting of infectious bacteria, infectious viruses, infectious parasites, and infectious fungi.

23. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject is an asthmatic.

10 24. The method of claim 1, further comprising administering a cytokine to the subject.

25. The method of claim 1, further comprising administering a B-7 costimulatory molecule.

26. The method of claim 1, wherein the mucosal immunity is induced in a remote site.

27. The method of claim 1, further comprising administering a boost of oligonucleotide.

15 28. The method of claim 8, further comprising administering a boost of the oligonucleotide and the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant.

29. A method for inducing a mucosal immune response, comprising

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an antigen and a plasmid vector, having a sequence including at least the  
20 following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides.

30. The method of claim 29, wherein the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

31. The method of claim 29, wherein the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector.

32. The method of claim 31, wherein the antigen is encoded by the plasmid vector.

33. The method of claim 29, wherein the plasmid vector includes a nucleic acid sequence  
5 which operatively encodes for a cytokine.

34. The method of claim 29, wherein the antigen and the plasmid vector are administered orally.

35. The method of claim 29, wherein the mucosal immunity is induced in a remote site.

36. The method of claim 29, wherein at least 50µg of the plasmid vector is administered  
10 to the subject.

37. The method of claim 29, further comprising the step of administering a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen.

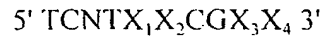
38. The method of claim 37, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives  
15 of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers, and ISCOMS.

39. The method of claim 29, further comprising administering a boost of oligonucleotide.

40. The method of claim 37, further comprising administering a boost of the  
20 oligonucleotide and the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant.

41. The method of claim 29, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA.

42. The method of claim 29, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $\text{X}_1$ ,  $\text{X}_2$ ,  $\text{X}_3$ , and  $\text{X}_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about 0-25 nucleotides.

43. The method of claim 29, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

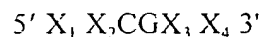
44. The method of claim 29, wherein the oligonucleotide includes a phosphate backbone modification which is a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification.

45. The method of claim 44, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

46. The method of claim 44, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 3' end of the oligonucleotide.

47. A method for inducing a mucosal immune response, comprising

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an antigen and of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $\text{X}_1$ ,  $\text{X}_2$ ,  $\text{X}_3$ , and  $\text{X}_4$  are nucleotides, and wherein the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector.

48. The method of claim 47, wherein the antigen and the oligonucleotide are administered orally.

49. The method of claim 47, wherein the mucosal immunity is induced in a remote site.

50. The method of claim 47, wherein at least 50 $\mu\text{g}$  of the plasmid vector is administered to the subject.

51. The method of claim 47, further comprising the step of administering a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen.

52. The method of claim 51, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers, and ISCOMS.

53. The method of claim 47, further comprising administering a boost of oligonucleotide.

54. The method of claim 47, further comprising administering a boost of the oligonucleotide and the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant.

55. The method of claim 47, wherein the oligonucleotide has a backbone selected from the group consisting of a phosphodiester backbone and a chimeric backbone.

56. The method of claim 47 wherein the oligonucleotide has a phosphorothioate backbone.

57. The method of 56 wherein plasmid and oligonucleotides are delivered with a colloidal dispersion system.

58. The method of 57 wherein the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems.

59. The method of 56 wherein plasmid and oligonucleotide are coated onto gold particles and are delivered with a gene-gun.

60. The method of claim 47, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA.

61. The method of claim 47, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:

62. The method of claim 47, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

64. The method of claim 62, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

66. A method for inducing a mucosal immune response in a subject, comprising:

15  $5' X_1 X_2 CGX_3 X_4 3'$

wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein X<sub>1</sub>, X<sub>2</sub>, X<sub>3</sub> and X<sub>4</sub> are nucleotides, and

administering to the subject a hormone to induce the mucosal immune response.

67. The method of claim 66, wherein the antigen and the oligonucleotide are administered to a mucosal surface of the subject.

20 68. The method of claim 66, wherein the hormone is administered systemically.

69. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising

orally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

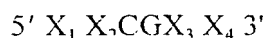
70. The method of claim 69, wherein the antigen is administered orally.

5        71. The method of claim 69, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide.

72. The method of claim 69, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

73. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising

10        orally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of a CpG containing plasmid, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

15        74. The method of claim 73, wherein the antigen is administered orally.

75. The method of claim 73, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the CpG containing plasmid.

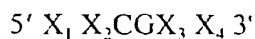
76. The method of claim 73, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

20        77. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising

intranasally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



- 81 -



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

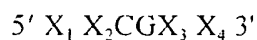
78. The method of claim 77, wherein the antigen is administered intranasally.

5 79. The method of claim 77, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide

80. The method of claim 77, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

81. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising

10 rectally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

15

82. The method of claim 81, wherein the antigen is administered rectally.

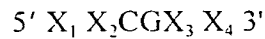
83. The method of claim 81, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide.

84. The method of claim 81, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective  
20 amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

85. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising

vaginally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response

of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

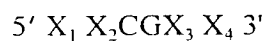
5 86. The method of claim 85, wherein the antigen is administered vaginally.

87. The method of claim 85, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide.

88. The method of claim 85, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

10 89. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising

ocularly administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

15 exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

90. The method of claim 89, wherein the antigen is administered ocularly.

91. The method of claim 89, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide.

20 92. The method of claim 89, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

93. A method for inducing a systemic immune response, comprising

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a systemic

immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$  and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

5 administering to the mucosal surface of the subject an antigen to induce the systemic immune response.

94. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is delivered in conjunction with a colloidal dispersion system.

95. The method of claim 94, wherein the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the  
10 group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems.

96. The method of claim 95, wherein the lipid-based system is selected from the group consisting of oil-in-water emulsions, micelles, mixed micelles, and liposomes.

97. The method of claim 93, further comprising the step of administering a non-  
15 oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen and the oligonucleotide.

98. The method of claim 97, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers,  
20 and ISCOMS.

99. The method of claim 93, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

100. The method of claim 93, wherein the oligonucleotide includes a phosphate backbone modification which is a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification.

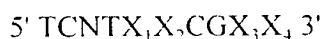
101. The method of claim 100, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the  
25 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

102. The method of claim 100, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the

3' end of the oligonucleotide.

103. The method of claim 93, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA and ApA and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT or TpC.

5 104. The method of claim 93, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about 0-25 nucleotides.

10 105. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is selected from the group consisting of cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, allergens, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites.

106. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is an allergen.

15 107. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is derived from an infectious organism selected from the group consisting of infectious bacteria, infectious viruses, infectious parasites, and infectious fungi.

108. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector, and wherein the antigen does not produce a systemic immune response when administered to the  
20 mucosal surface alone.

109. A method for inducing a systemic immune response, comprising

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a systemic immune response of a combination of a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant and an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject an antigen to induce the systemic immune response.

110. The method of claim 109, wherein the subject is actively exposed to the antigen and wherein the antigen is delivered in conjunction with a colloidal dispersion system.

5        111. The method of claim 110, wherein the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems.

112. The method of claim 111, wherein the lipid-based system is selected from the group consisting of oil-in-water emulsions, micelles, mixed micelles, and liposomes.

10        113. The method of claim 110, wherein the antigen is delivered to a mucosal surface.

114. The method of claim 113, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP  
15        polymers, and ISCOMS.

115. The method of claim 109, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

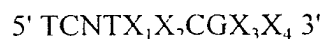
116. The method of claim 109, wherein the oligonucleotide includes a phosphate backbone modification which is a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification.

20        117. The method of claim 116, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

118. The method of claim 116, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 3' end of the oligonucleotide.

119. The method of claim 109, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group  
25        consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA and ApA and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT or TpC.

120. The method of claim 109, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $\text{X}_1$ ,  $\text{X}_2$ ,  $\text{X}_3$ , and  $\text{X}_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about  
5 0-25 nucleotides.

121. The method of claim 109, wherein the antigen is selected from the group consisting of cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, allergens, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites.

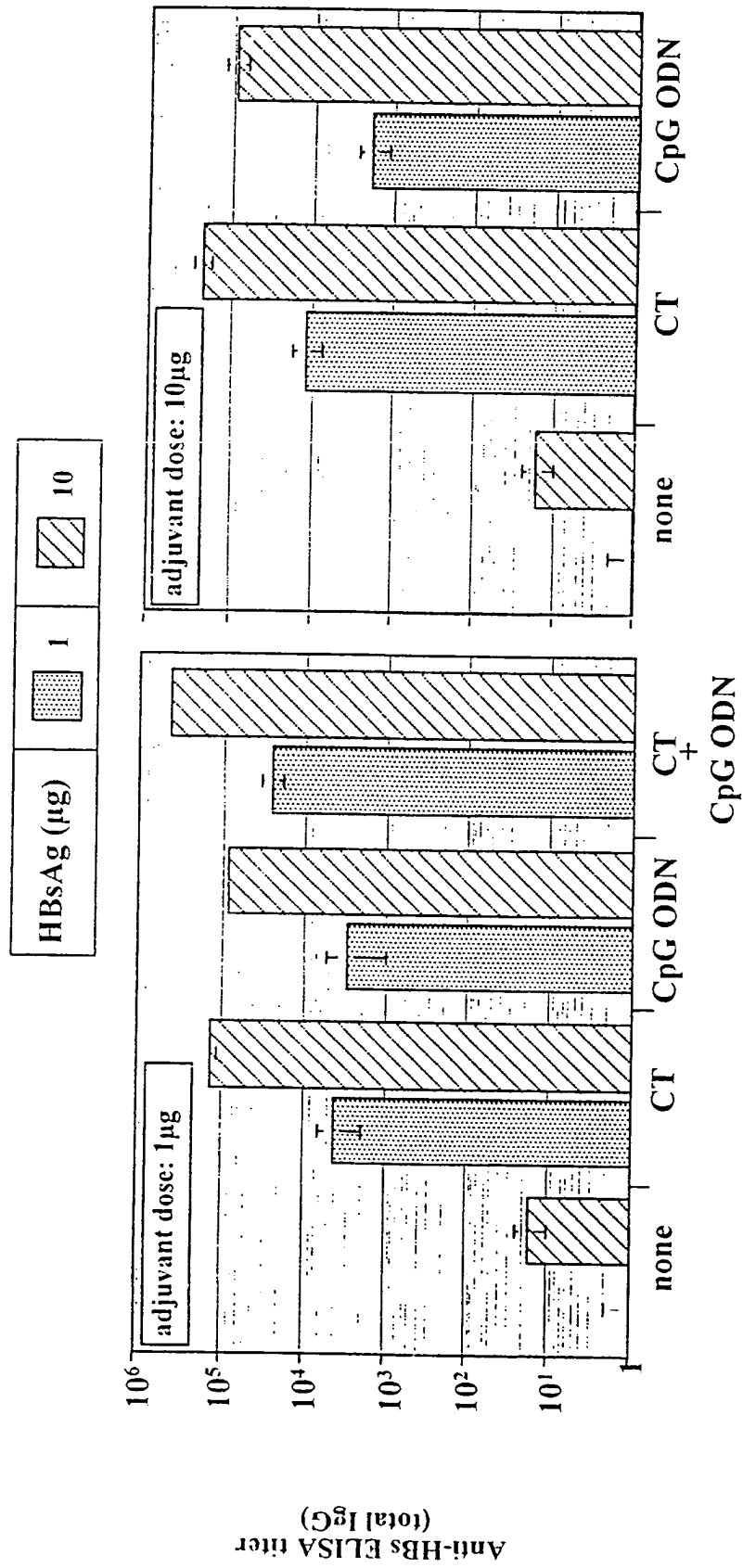
10 122. The method of claim 109, wherein the antigen is an allergen.

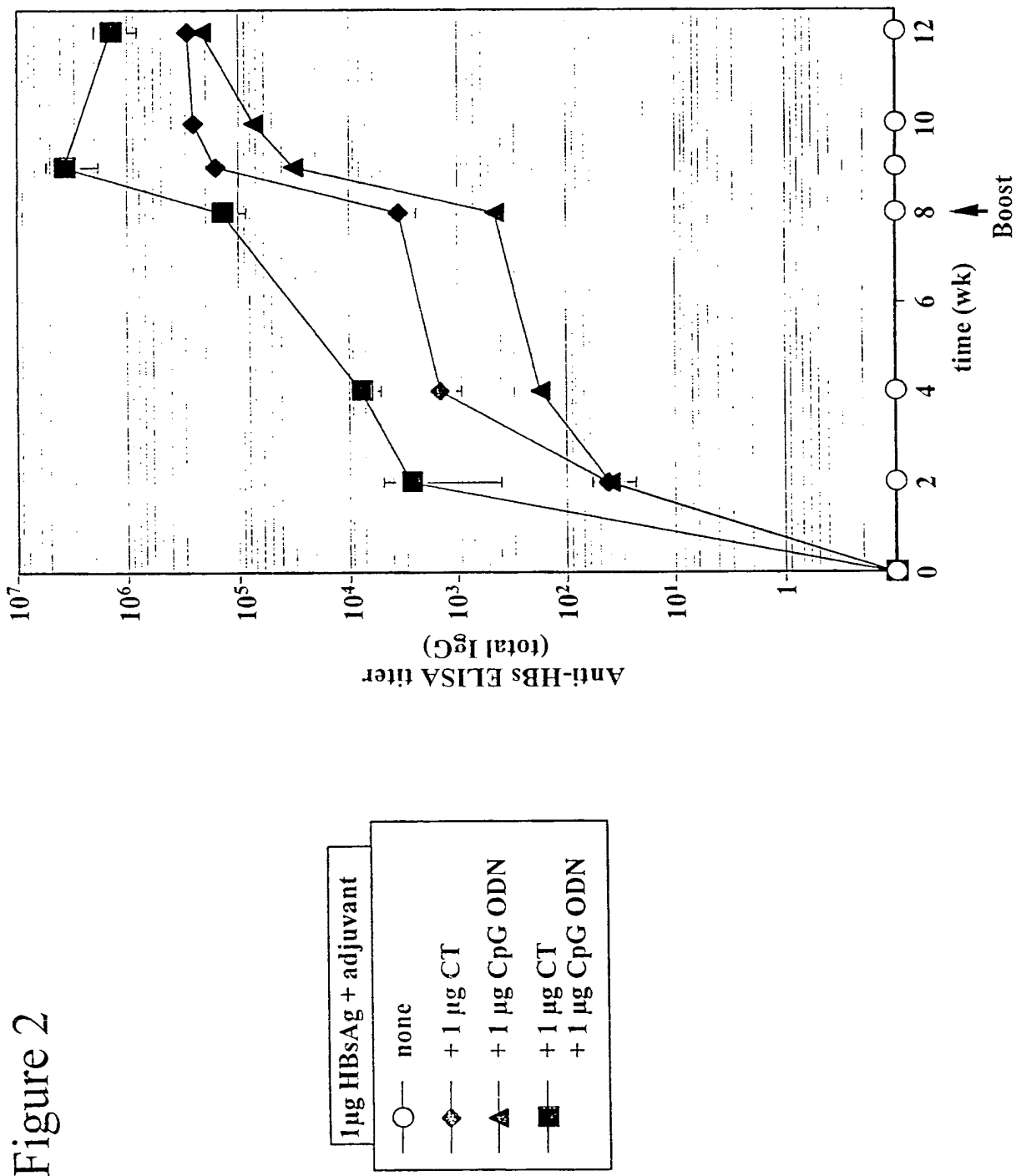
123. The method of claim 109, wherein the antigen is derived from an infectious organism selected from the group consisting of infectious bacteria, infectious viruses, infectious parasites, and infectious fungi.

124. The method of claim 109, wherein the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

15

Figure 1







3/13

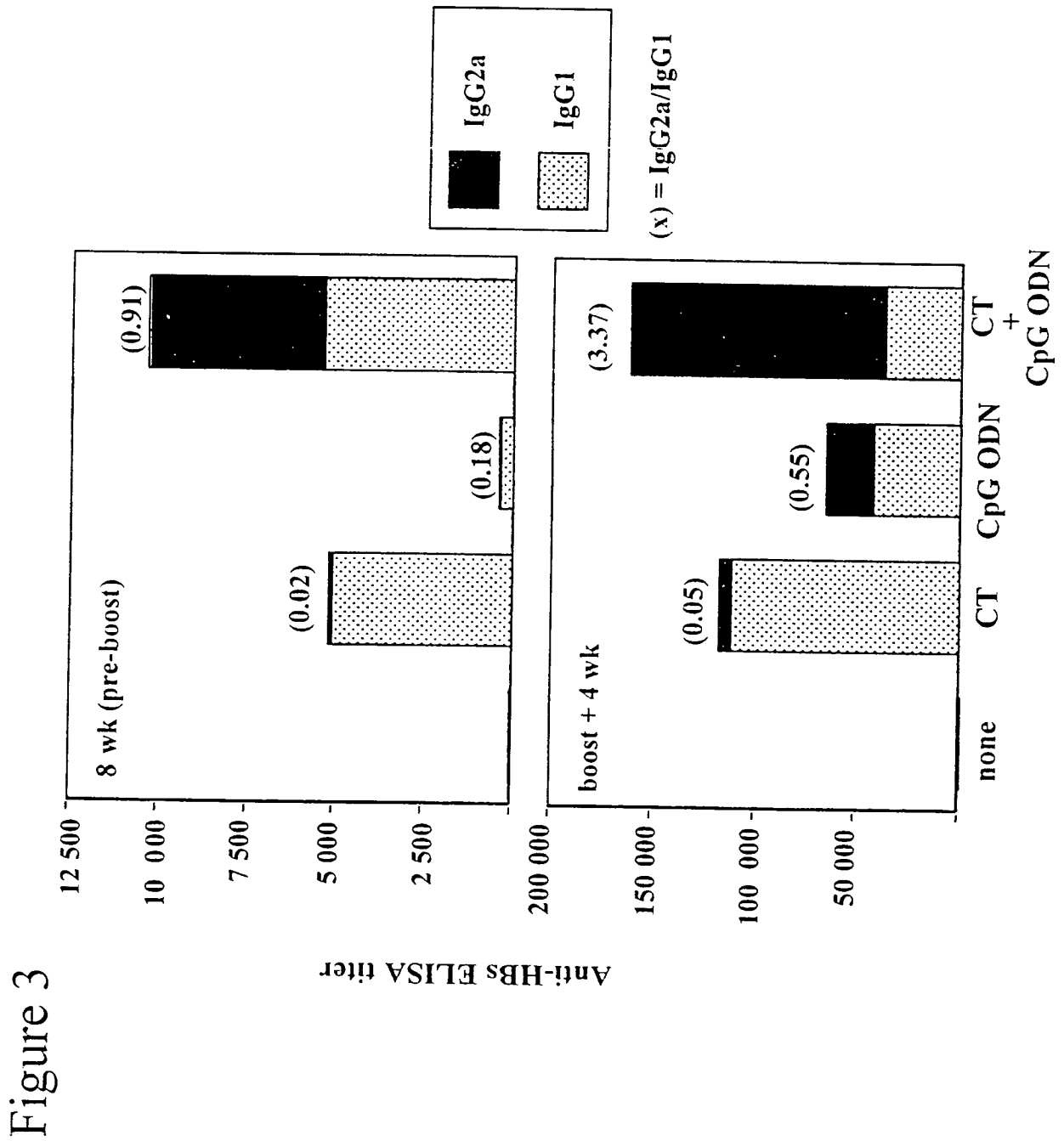


Figure 4

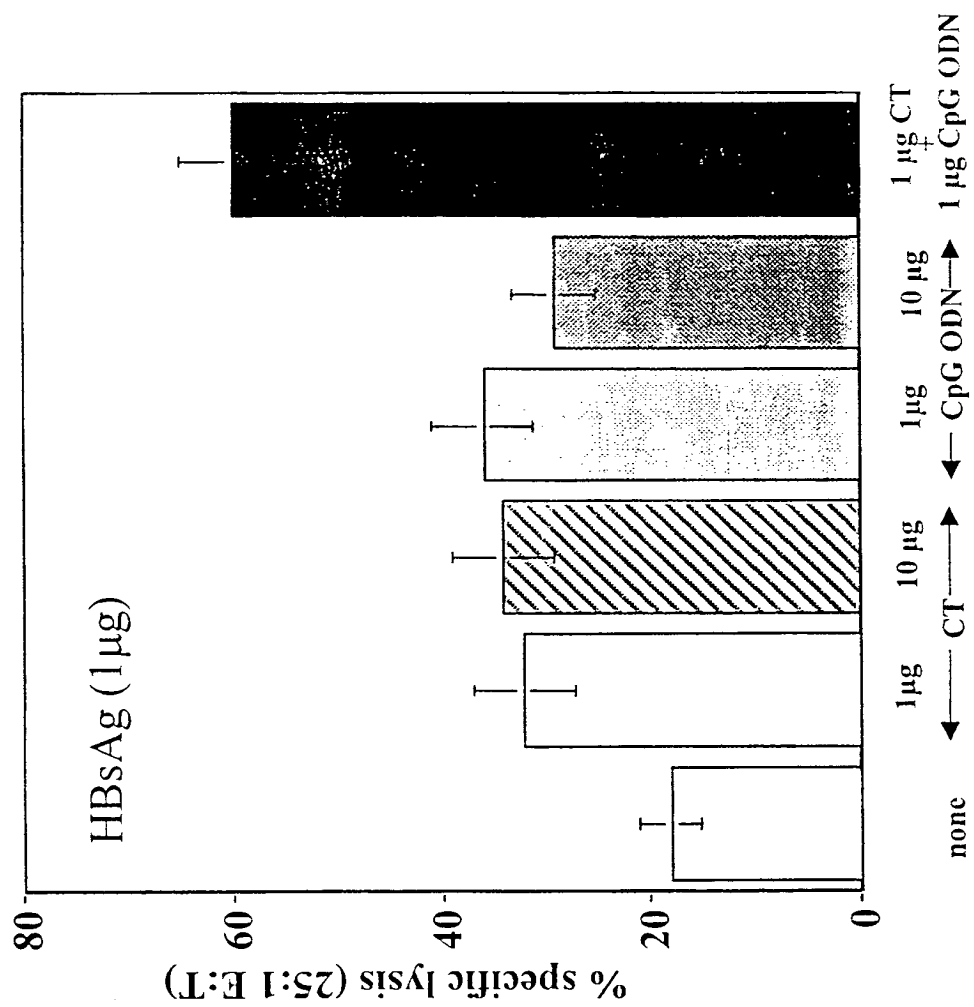


Figure 5

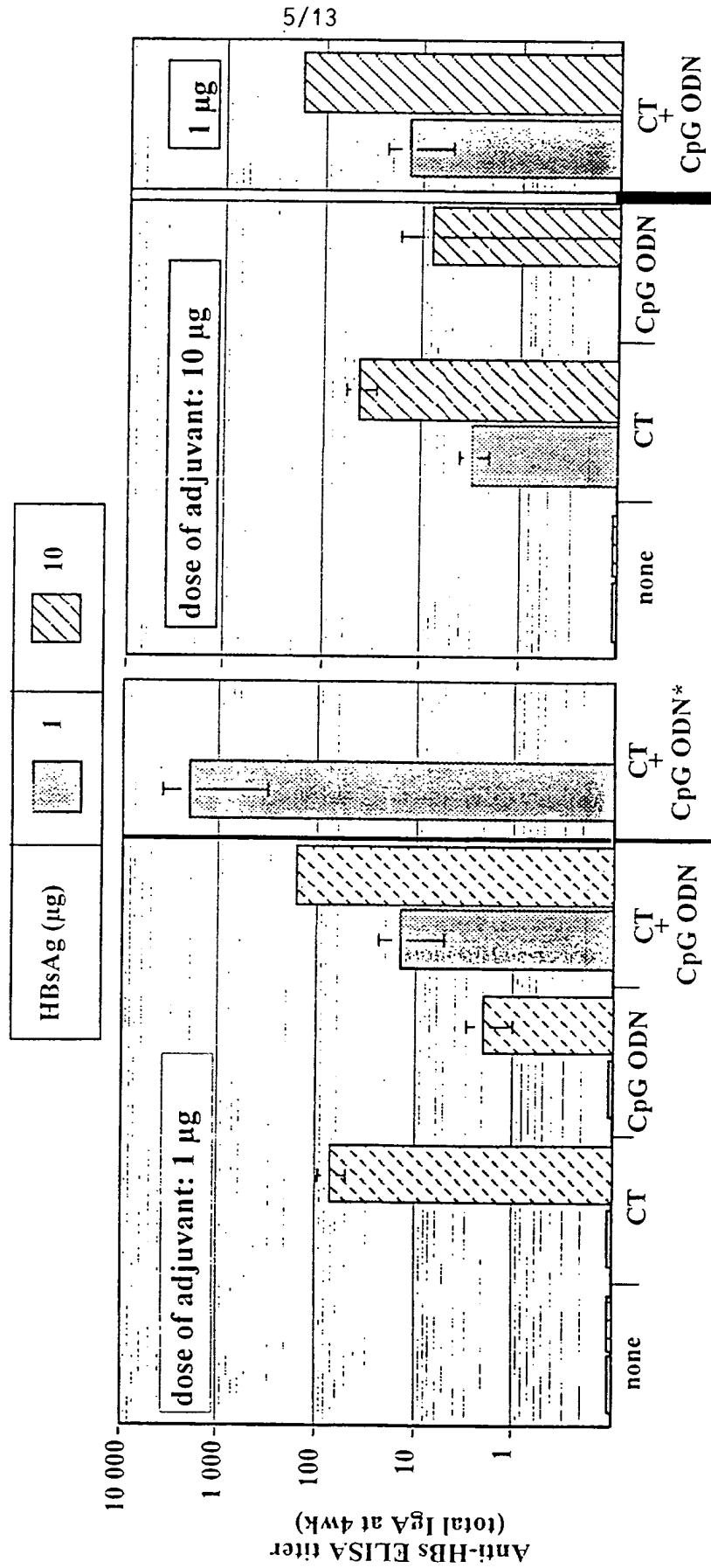
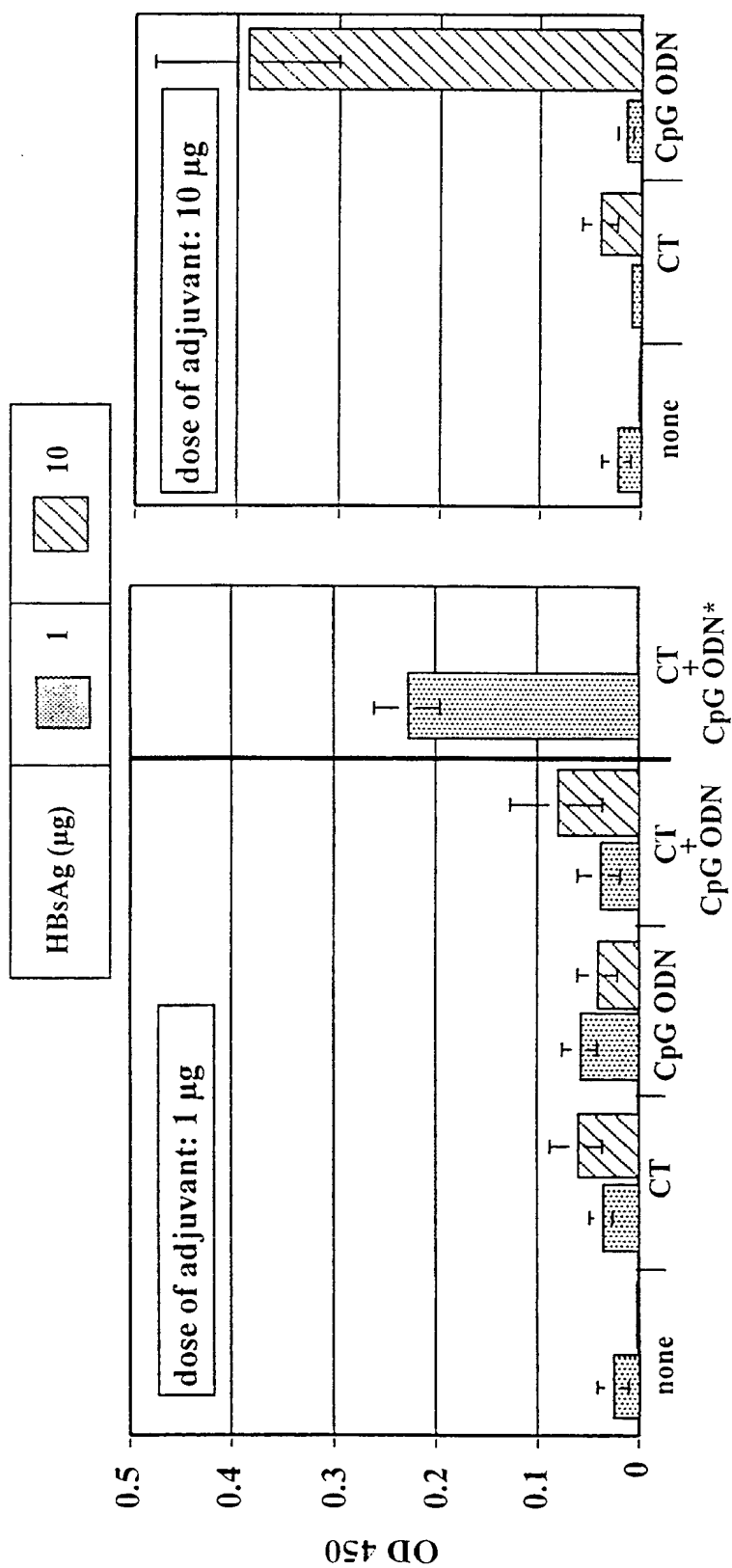
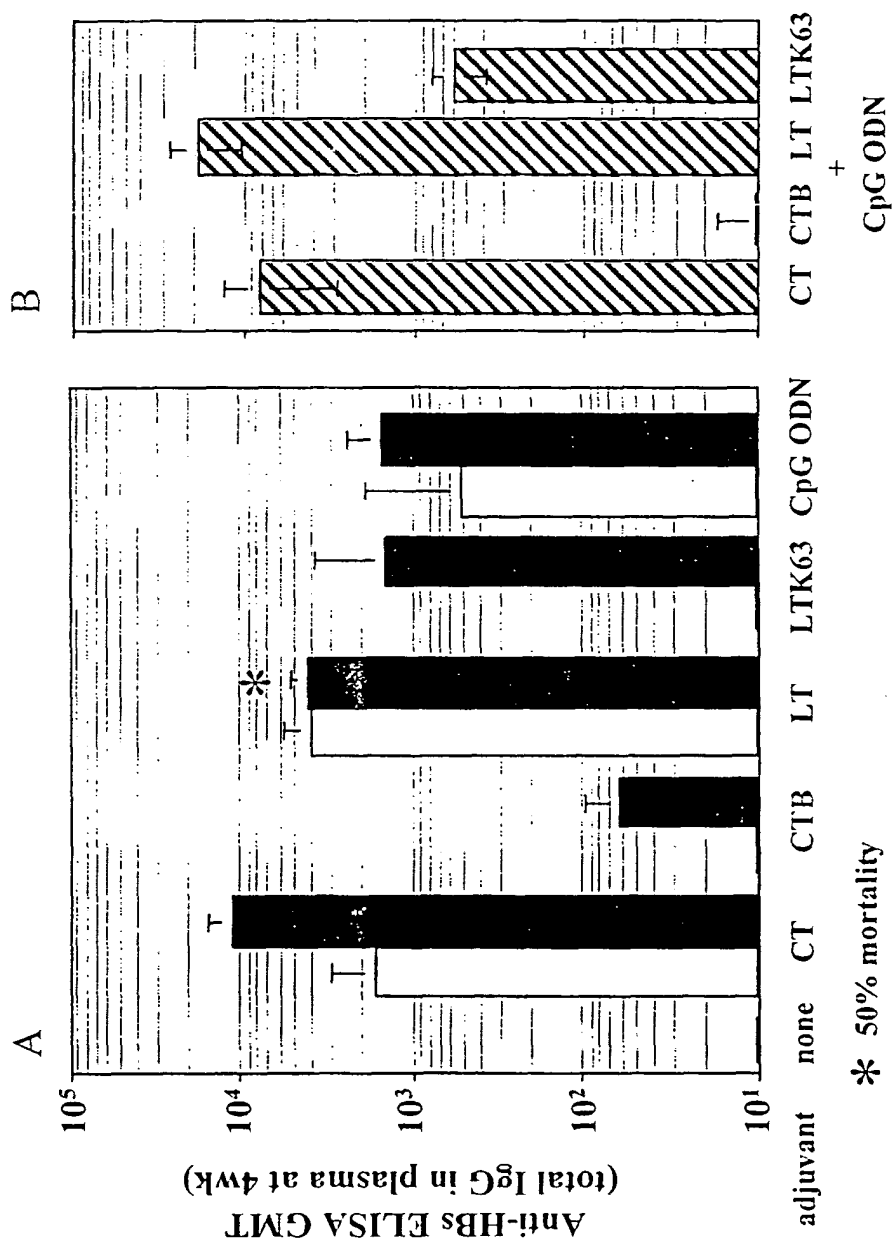


Figure 6



7/13

Figure 7



**Figure 8** The Effect of different prime/boost strategies on systemic humoral responses.

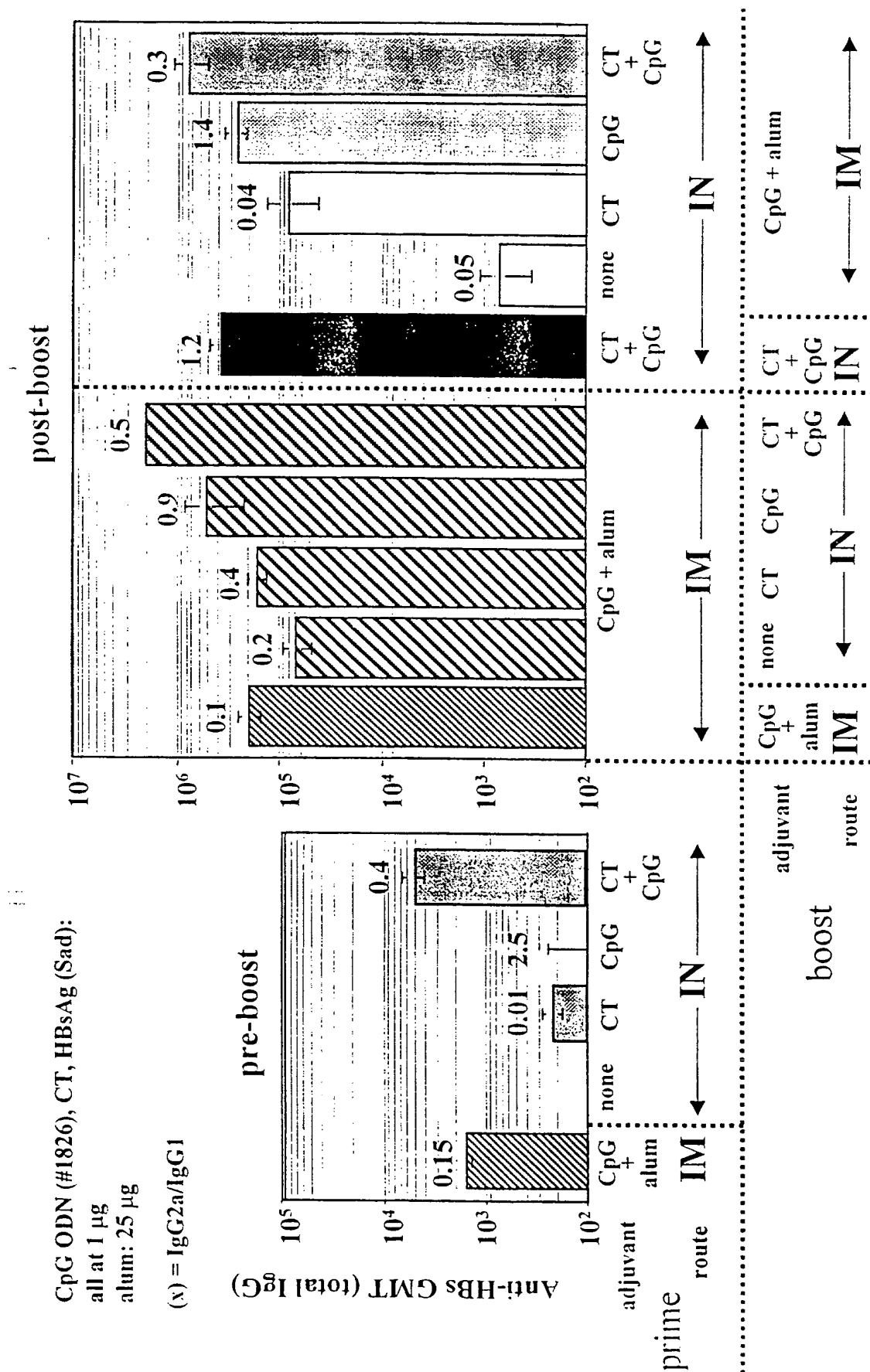


Figure 9 Effect of different prime/boost strategies on CTL

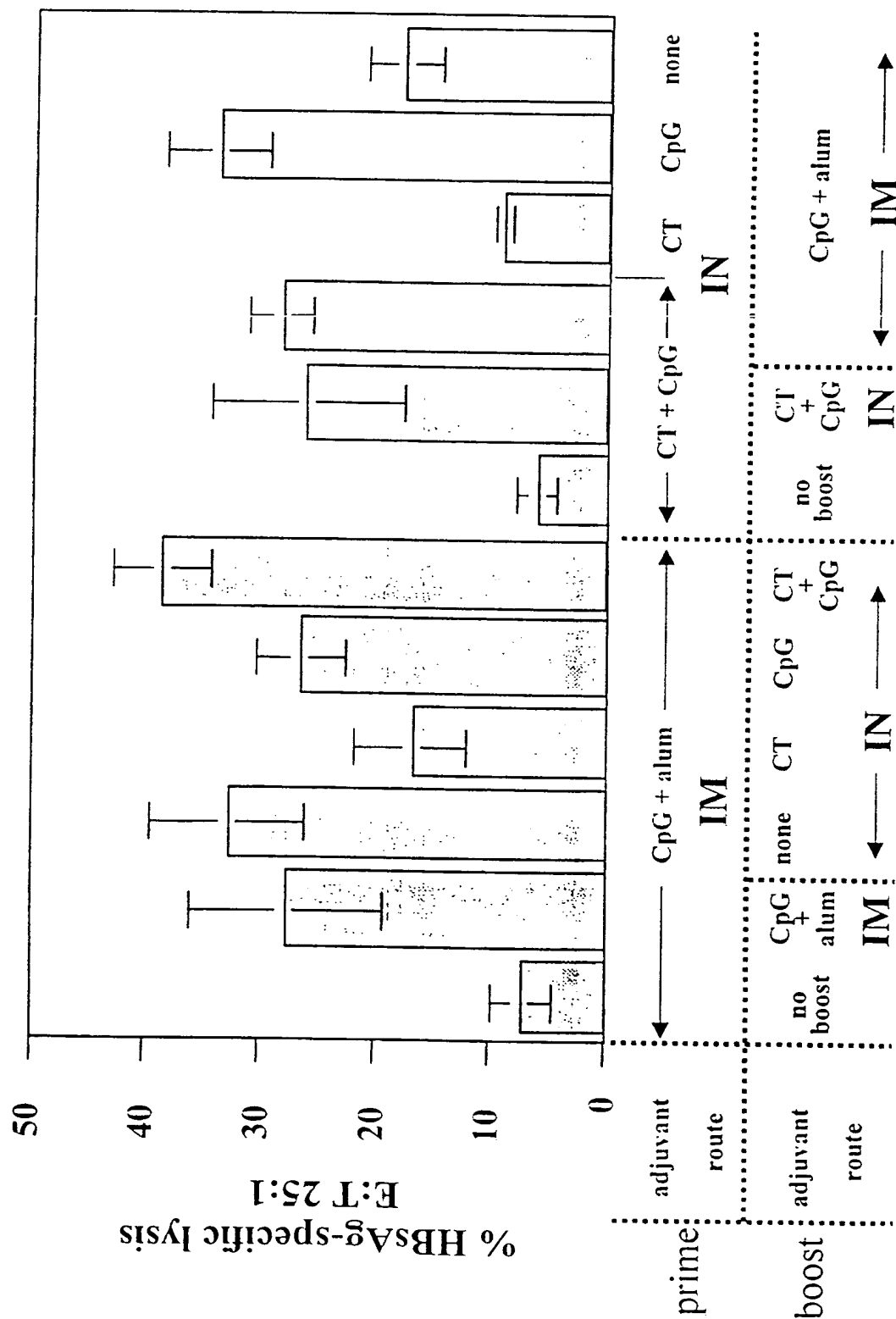


Figure 10 Effect of prime/boost strategies on T-cell proliferation

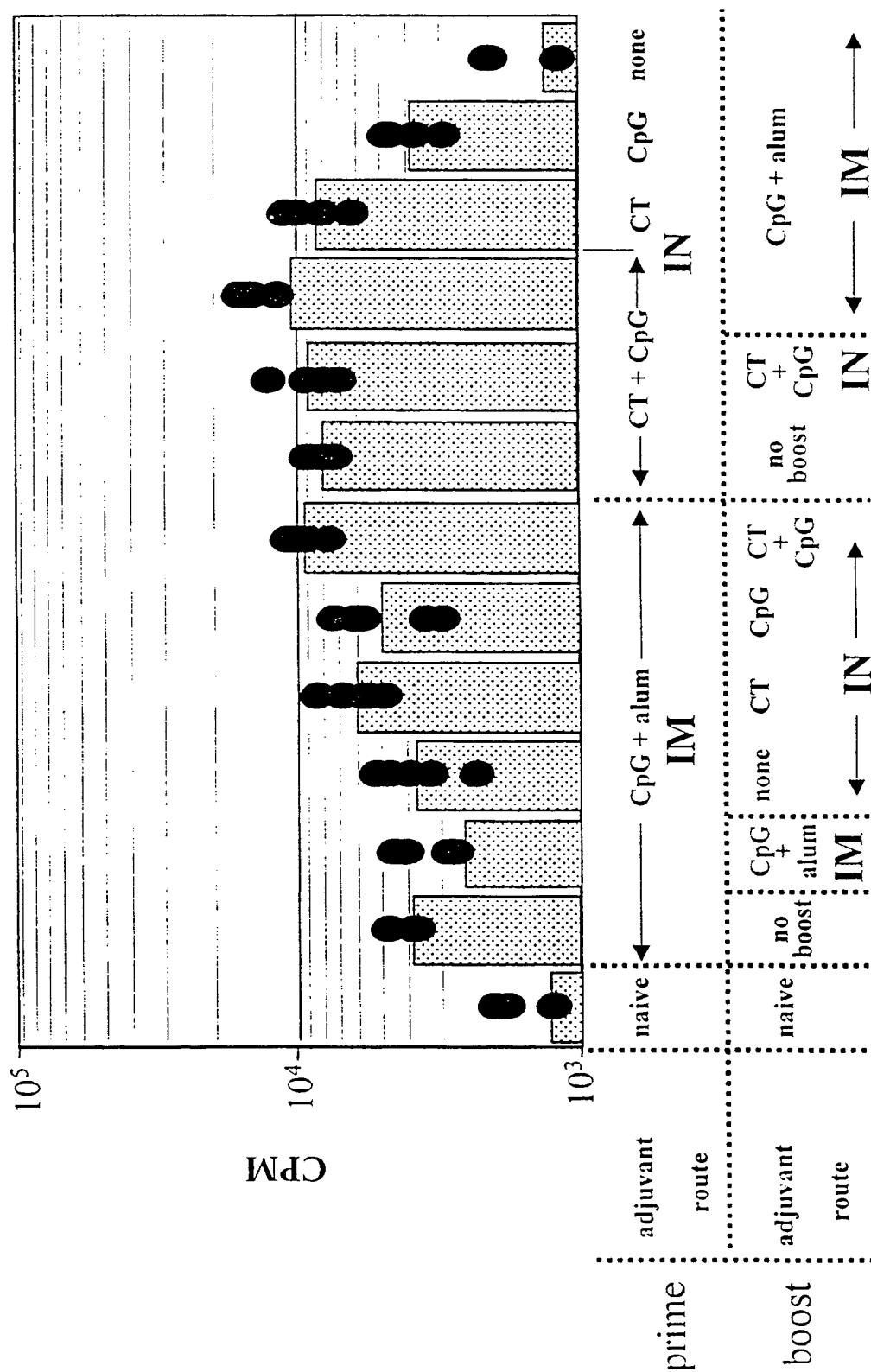




Figure 11 Effect of prime/boost strategies on IgA in lung washes

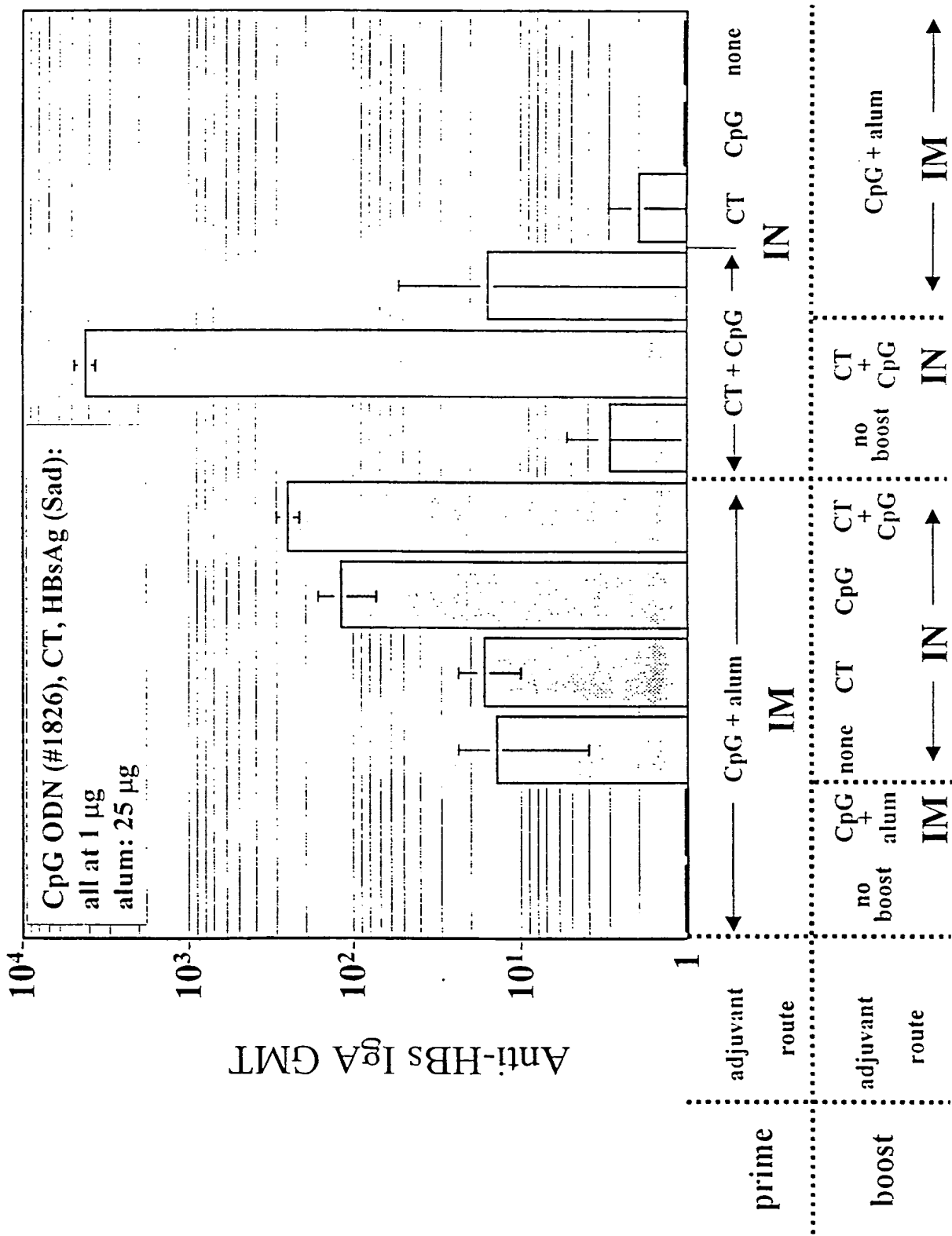


Figure 12 Effect of prime/boost strategies on HBsAg-specific IgA in saliva

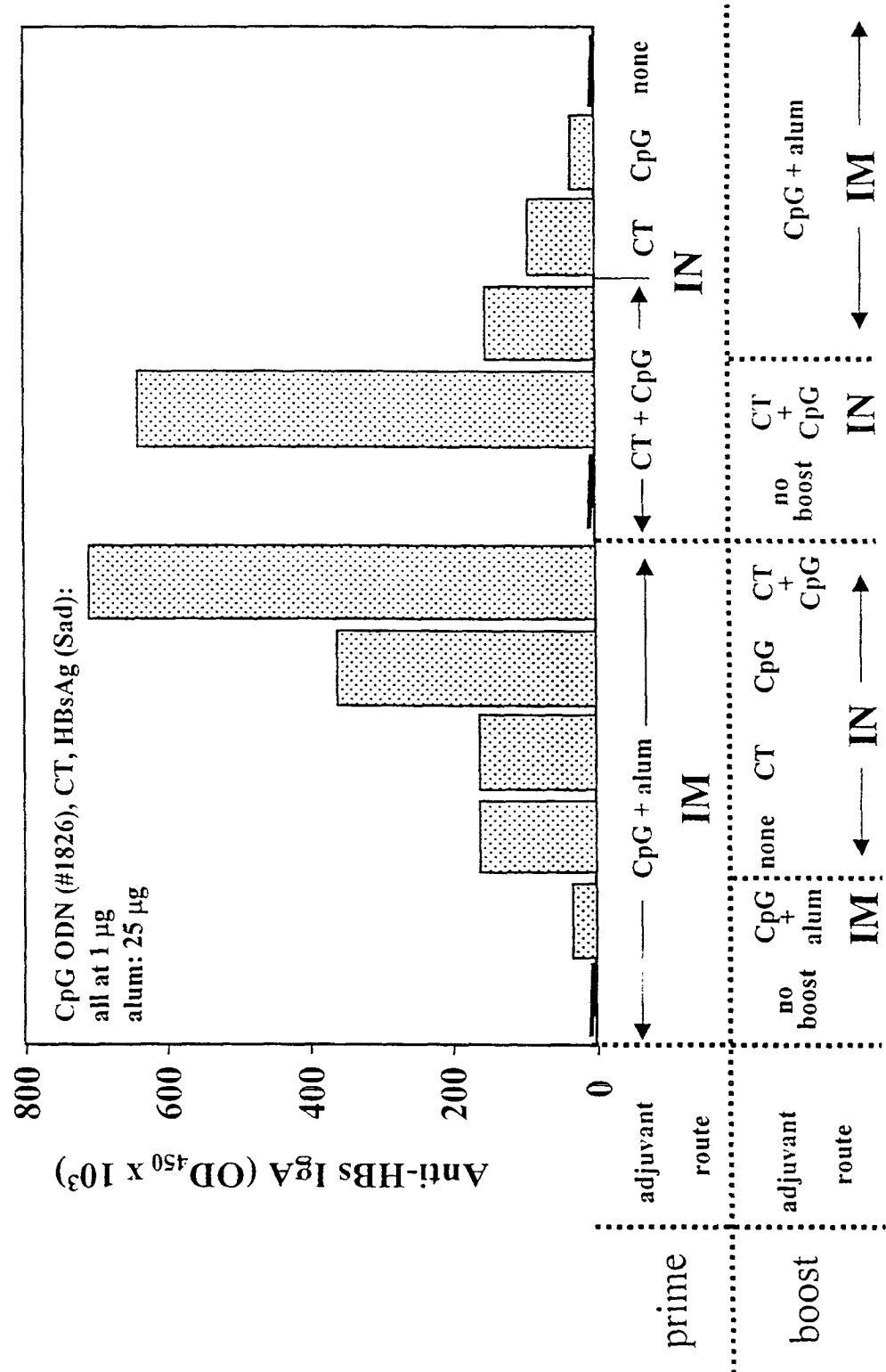
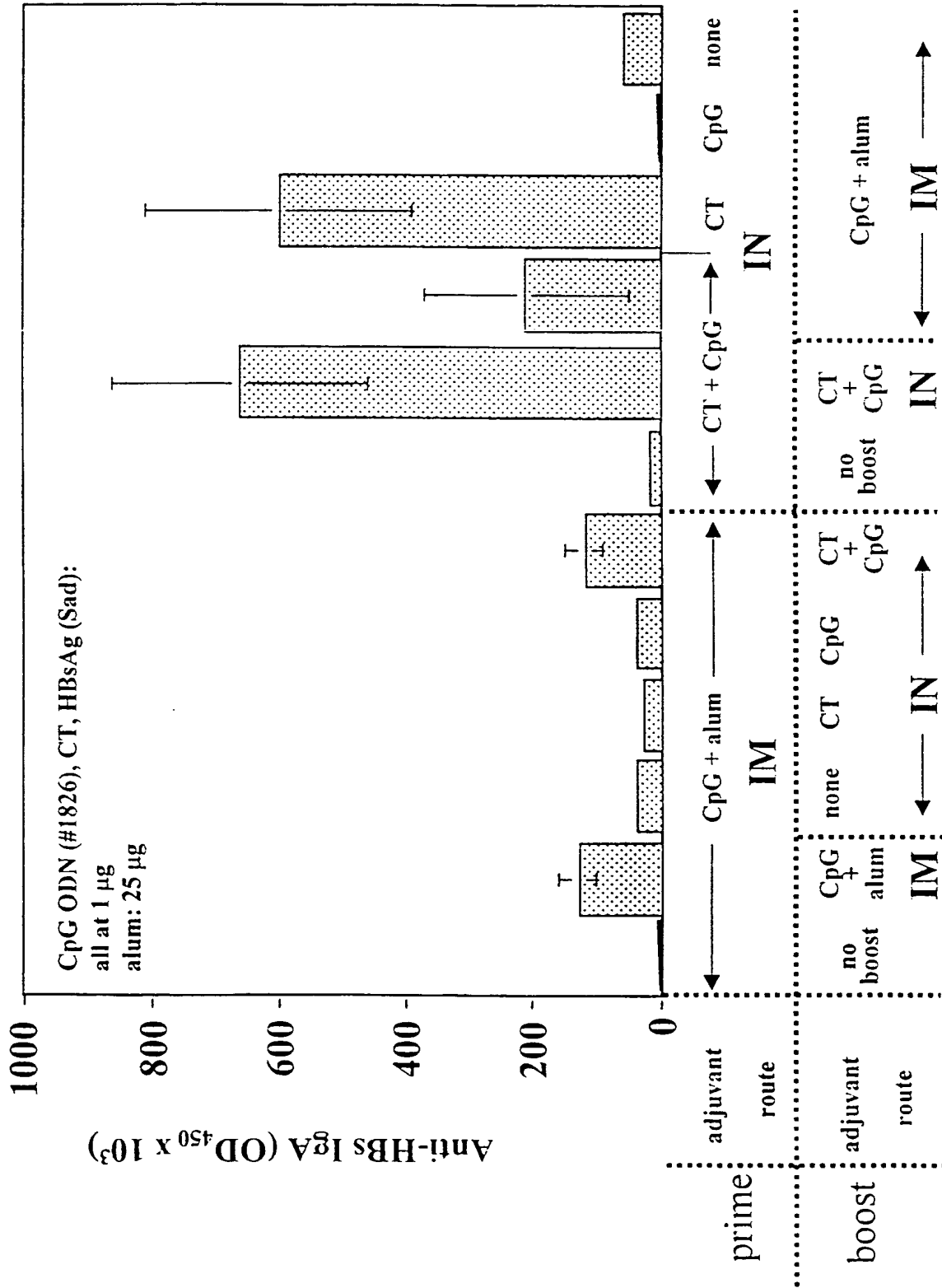


Figure 13  
Effect of prime/boost strategies on IgA in fecal solutions



-1-

## SEQUENCE LISTING

&lt;110&gt; Ottawa Civic Hospital Loeb Research Institute

<120> Methods and Products for Inducing  
Mucosal Immunity

&lt;130&gt; C1040/7006WO/HCL

&lt;150&gt; US 60/086,393

&lt;151&gt; 1998-05-21

&lt;160&gt; 95

&lt;170&gt; FastSEQ for Windows Version 3.0

&lt;210&gt; 1

&lt;211&gt; 15

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;400&gt; 1

gctagacgtt agcgt

15

&lt;210&gt; 2

&lt;211&gt; 15

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;400&gt; 2

gctagatgtt agcgt

15

&lt;210&gt; 3

&lt;211&gt; 15

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;221&gt; modified\_base

&lt;222&gt; (7)...(7)

&lt;223&gt; m5c

&lt;400&gt; 3

gctagacgtt agcgt

15

&lt;210&gt; 4

&lt;211&gt; 15

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;221&gt; modified\_base

&lt;222&gt; (13)...(13)

&lt;223&gt; m5c

-2-

<400> 4  
gctagacggt agcgt 15

<210> 5  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 5  
gcatgacggt gagct 15

<210> 6  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 6  
atggaaggtc cagcggttctc 20

<210> 7  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 7  
atcgactctc gagcggttctc 20

<210> 8  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (3)...(3)  
<223> m5c

<400> 8  
atcgactctc gagcggttctc 20

<210> 9  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (18)...(18)  
<223> m5c

<400> 9  
atcgactctc gagcggttctc 20

<210> 10  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA

-3-

<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 10  
atggaaggctc caacgttctc 20

<210> 11  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 11  
gagaacgctg gaccttccat 20

<210> 12  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 12  
gagaacgctc gaccttccat 20

<210> 13  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 13  
gagaacgctc gaccttcgat 20

<210> 14  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (14)... (14)  
<223> m5c

<400> 14  
gagaacgctg gaccttccat 20

<210> 15  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 15  
gagaacgatg gaccttccat 20

<210> 16  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 16

- 4 -

gagaacgctc cagcactgat 20

<210> 17  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 17  
tccatgtcgg tcctgatgct 20

<210> 18  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (12) ... (12)  
<223> m5c

<400> 18  
tccatgtcgg tcctgatgct 20

<210> 19  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 19  
tccatgacgt tcctgatgct 20

<210> 20  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 20  
tccatgtcgg tcctgctgat 20

<210> 21  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 21  
tcaacggt 8

<210> 22  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 22  
tcagcgct 8

<210> 23

- 5 -

<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 23  
tcatcgat 8

<210> 24  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 24  
tcttcgaa 8

<210> 25  
<211> 7  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 25  
caacggtt 7

<210> 26  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 26  
ccaacggtt 8

<210> 27  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 27  
aacgttct 8

<210> 28  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 28  
tcaacgtc 8

<210> 29  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 29  
atggactctc cagcgttctc 20

<210> 30



- 6 -

<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 30  
atggaagggtc caacgttctc 20

<210> 31  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 31  
atcgactctc gagcgttctc 20

<210> 32  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 32  
atggagggtc catcgttctc 20

<210> 33  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (14) ... (14)  
<223> m5c

<400> 33  
atcgactctc gagcgttctc 20

<210> 34  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (18) ... (18)  
<223> m5c

<400> 34  
atcgactctc gagcgttctc 20

<210> 35  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 35  
tccatgtcgg tcttgatgct 20

- 7 -

<210> 36  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 36  
tccatgccgg tctgatgct 20

<210> 37  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 37  
tccatggcgg tctgatgct 20

<210> 38  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 38  
tccatgacgg tctgatgct 20

<210> 39  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 39  
tccatgtcga tctgatgct 20

<210> 40  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 40  
tccatgtcgc tctgatgct 20

<210> 41  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 41  
tccatgtcgt ccctgatgct 20

<210> 42  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 42  
tccatgacgt gcctgatgct 20

- 8 -

<210> 43  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 43  
tccataacgt tcttgatgct 20

<210> 44  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 44  
tccatgacgt ccctgatgct 20

<210> 45  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 45  
tccatcacgt gcttgatgct 20

<210> 46  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 46  
ggggtcaacg ttgacgggg 19

<210> 47  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 47  
ggggtcagtc gtgacgggg 19

<210> 48  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 48  
gctagacgtt agtgt 15

<210> 49  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 49  
tccatgtcgt tcttgatgct 20

- 9 -

<210> 50  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 50  
accatggacg atctgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 51  
<211> 18  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 51  
tctcccagcg tgcgccat 18

<210> 52  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 52  
accatggacg aactgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 53  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 53  
accatggacg agctgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 54  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 54  
accatggacg acctgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 55  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 55  
accatggacg tactgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 56  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 56  
accatggacg gtctgtttcc cctc 24

-10-

<210> 57  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 57  
accatggacg ttctgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 58  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 58  
cacgttgagg ggcac 15

<210> 59  
<211> 12  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 59  
tcagcgtgcg cc 12

<210> 60  
<211> 17  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 60  
atgacgttcc tgacgtt 17

<210> 61  
<211> 17  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 61  
tctcccagcg ggcgcat 17

<210> 62  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 62  
tccatgtcgt tcctgtcgtt 20

<210> 63  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 63  
tccatagcgt tcctagcgtt 20

-11-

<210> 64  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 64  
tcgtcgtcgt ctcccccttct t 21

<210> 65  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 65  
tcctgacggt cctgacggt 19

<210> 66  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 66  
tcctgtcgtt cctgtcgtt 19

<210> 67  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 67  
tccatgtcgt ttttgtcgtt 20

<210> 68  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 68  
tcctgtcgtt ccttgtcgtt 20

<210> 69  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 69  
tccttgtcgt tcctgtcgtt 20

<210> 70  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 70  
tcctgtcgtt ttttgtcgtt 20

-12-

<210> 71  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 71  
tcgtcgtgtgt ctgcccttct t 21

<210> 72  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 72  
tcgtcgtgtgt tgtcgtttct t 21

<210> 73  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 73  
tccatgcgtg cgtgcgtttt 20

<210> 74  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 74  
tccatgcgtt gcgttgcgtt 20

<210> 75  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 75  
tccacgacgt ttctgacgtt 20

<210> 76  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 76  
tcgtcgttgt cgttgcgtt 20

<210> 77  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 77  
tcgtcgtttt gtcgttttgt cgtt 24

-13-

<210> 78  
<211> 22  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 78  
tcgtcgttgcg cgttttgcg tt 22

<210> 79  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 79  
gcgtgcgttg tcgttgcgt t 21

<210> 80  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 80  
tgtcgtttgcg cgtttgcgt t 21

<210> 81  
<211> 25  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 81  
tgtcgttgtc gttgctgttg tcgtt 25

<210> 82  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 82  
tgtcgttgtc gttgctgtt 19

<210> 83  
<211> 14  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 83  
tcgtcgtcgt cggt 14

<210> 84  
<211> 13  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 84  
tgtcgttgtc gtt 13



- 14 -

<210> 85  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 85  
tccatagcgt tcctagcgtt 20

<210> 86  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 86  
tccatgacgt tcctgacgtt 20

<210> 87  
<211> 6  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 87  
gtcgyt 6

<210> 88  
<211> 7  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 88  
tgtcgyt 7

<210> 89  
<211> 18  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 89  
agctatgacg ttccaagg 18

<210> 90  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 90  
tccatgacgt tcctgacgtt 20

<210> 91  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 91  
tccaggactt ctctcaggtt 20

-15-

<210> 92  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 92  
atcgactctc gaacgttctc 20

<210> 93  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 93  
tccatgtcgg tcctgacgca 20

<210> 94  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 94  
tcttcgat 8

<210> 95  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

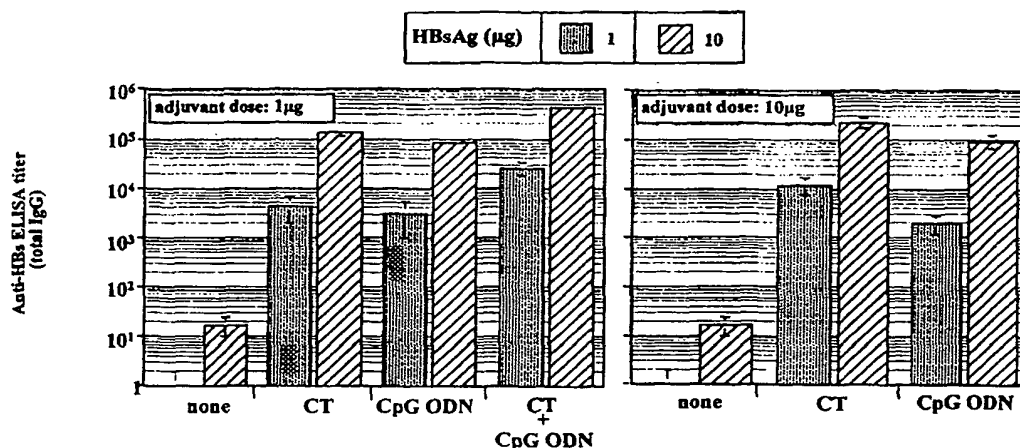
<400> 95  
ataggaggtc caacgttctc 20



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>A61K 39/39, 31/70, 39/00, 9/00</b>		<b>A3</b>	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 99/61056</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 2 December 1999 (02.12.99)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US99/11359 (22) International Filing Date: 21 May 1999 (21.05.99) (30) Priority Data: 60/086,393 22 May 1998 (22.05.98) US (71) Applicants: LOEB HEALTH RESEARCH INSTITUTE AT THE OTTAWA HOSPITAL [CA/CA]; 725 Parkdale Avenue, Ottawa, Ontario K1Y 4E9 (CA). CPG IM- MUNOPHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; Suite 120, 55 William Street, Wellesley, MA 02481 (US). (72) Inventors: MCCLUSKIE, Michael, J.; 504-345 Clarence Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1N 5R5 (CA). DAVIS, Heather, L.; 33 Willard Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1S 1T4 (CA). (74) Agent: LOCKHART, Helen, C.; Wolf, Greenfield & Sacks, P.C., 600 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210 (US).		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published With international search report. (88) Date of publication of the international search report: 6 April 2000 (06.04.00)	

(54) Title: METHODS AND PRODUCTS FOR INDUCING MUCOSAL IMMUNITY



## (57) Abstract

The invention relates methods and products for inducing mucosal immunity. In particular, the invention relates to the use of immunostimulatory oligonucleotides containing a CpG motif for inducing mucosal immunity. The CpG immunostimulatory oligonucleotides may be administered alone or in combination with antigen and/or with other adjuvants.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PT/US 99/11359

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 A61K39/39 A61K31/70 A61K39/00 A61K9/00

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation or document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	LIPFORD G.B. ET AL.: " CpG-containing synthetic oligonucleotides promote B and cytotoxic T cell responses to protein antigen: a new class of vaccine adjuvants "  EUR. J. IMMUNOL., vol. 27, 1997, pages 2340-2344, XP002123073 the whole document  ---	1-124
X	DAVIS H L ET AL: "CpG DNA is a potent enhancer of specific immunity in mice immunized with recombinant hepatitis B surface antigen 'published erratum appears in J Immunol 1999 Mar 1;162(5):3103!." JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, (1998 JAN 15) 160 (2) 870-6. , XP002125529 the whole document  ---	1-124
-/--		

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

### Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance: the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance: the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"Z" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

14 December 1999

Date of mailing of the international search report

28/12/1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P B 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Moreau, J

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/US 99/11359

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 98 18810 A (THE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA RESEARCH FOUNDATION) 7 May 1998 (1998-05-07) the whole document ---	1-124
P,X	MCCLUSKIE M J ET AL: "CpG DNA is a potent enhancer of specific immunity in mice immunized with recombinant hepatitis B surface antigen 'published erratum appears in J Immunol 1999 Mar 1;162(5):3103!." JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, (1998 NOV 1) 161 (9) 4463-6. , XP002125530 the whole document ---	1-124
P,X	LIU H M ET AL: "Immunostimulatory CpG oligodeoxynucleotides enhance the immune response to vaccine strategies involving granulocyte- macrophage colony-stimulating factor." BLOOD, (1998 NOV 15) 92 (10) 3730-6. , XP002125531 the whole document ---	1-124
P,X	KLINMAN D M ET AL: "CpG motifs as immune adjuvants" VACCINE.GB,BUTTERWORTH SCIENTIFIC. GUILDFORD, vol. 17, no. 1, page 19-25 XP004139028 ISSN: 0264-410X the whole document ---	1-124
P,X	MOLDOVEANU Z ET AL: "CpG DNA, a novel immune enhancer for systemic and mucosal immunization with influenza virus" VACCINE.GB,BUTTERWORTH SCIENTIFIC. GUILDFORD, vol. 16, no. 11-12, page 1216-1224 XP004124627 ISSN: 0264-410X the whole document -----	1-124

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US 99/ 11359

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claims 1-124 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.

☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees

## formation on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 99/11359

Form PCT/ISA210 (patent family annex) (July 1992)



WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : A61K 39/39, 31/70, 39/00, 9/00		A3	(11) International Publication Number: WO 99/61056
			(43) International Publication Date: 2 December 1999 (02.12.99)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US99/11359		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(22) International Filing Date: 21 May 1999 (21.05.99)			
(30) Priority Data: 60/086,393 22 May 1998 (22.05.98) US			
(71) Applicants: LOEB HEALTH RESEARCH INSTITUTE AT THE OTTAWA HOSPITAL [CA/CA]; 725 Parkdale Avenue, Ottawa, Ontario K1Y 4E9 (CA). CPG IMMUNOPHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; Suite 120, 55 William Street, Wellesley, MA 02481 (US).			
(72) Inventors: MCCLUSKIE, Michael, J.; 504-345 Clarence Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1N 5R5 (CA). DAVIS, Heather, L.; 33 Willard Street, Ottawa, Ontario K1S 1T4 (CA).		Published With international search report	
(74) Agent: LOCKHART, Helen, C.; Wolf, Greenfield & Sacks, P.C., 600 Atlantic Avenue, Boston, MA 02210 (US).		(88) Date of publication of the international search report: 6 April 2000 (06.04.00)	
(54) Title: METHODS AND PRODUCTS FOR INDUCING MUCOSAL IMMUNITY			
(57) Abstract			
<p>The invention relates methods and products for inducing mucosal immunity. In particular, the invention relates to the use of immunostimulatory oligonucleotides containing a CpG motif for inducing mucosal immunity. The CpG immunostimulatory oligonucleotides may be administered alone or in combination with antigen and/or with other adjuvants.</p>			

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece			TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

## **METHODS AND PRODUCTS FOR INDUCING MUCOSAL IMMUNITY**

### **Field Of The Invention**

The present invention relates methods and products for inducing mucosal immunity.

5 In particular, the invention relates to the use of immunostimulatory oligonucleotides containing a CpG motif alone or in combination with other mucosal adjuvants for inducing mucosal immunity.

### **Background Of The Invention**

Two distinct compartments of the immune system have been identified: (i) the  
10 systemic, which comprises the bone marrow, spleen and lymph nodes, and (ii) the mucosal, which comprises lymphoid tissue associated with mucosal surfaces and external secretory glands (McGhee *et al.*, 1992). Mucosal surfaces are associated with the gastrointestinal (GI), genitourinary (GU) and respiratory tracts. Each compartment is associated with both humoral (antibodies) and cell-mediated (cytotoxic T-cells) responses, however there are differences in  
15 the nature of the immune responses induced in each compartment. Antibodies associated with the systemic compartment are predominantly of the IgG isotype, which function to neutralize pathogens in the circulatory system. In contrast, antibodies in the mucosae are primarily secretory IgA (S-IgA), which function to prevent entry of the pathogen into the body via the mucosal surface (Lamm *et al.*, 1992). Systemic immunity cannot prevent entry of pathogenic  
20 organisms at mucosal surfaces.

Successful systemic immunization (i.e., delivery of antigen to the systemic compartment) will induce systemic immunity but does not usually yield mucosal immune responses. In contrast, antigen delivered at mucosal surfaces triggers both mucosal (at local and sometimes at distant sites) and systemic responses (Haneberg *et al.*, 1994, Gallichan and  
25 Rosenthal, 1995).

Most vaccines developed to date are delivered parenterally, for example by intramuscular (IM) or intradermal (ID) injection, and as such induce primarily systemic immunity. However, the combined mucosal surface area is more than 200 times greater than that of the skin and is the primary site of transmission of numerous infectious diseases.  
30 Therefore, current vaccination strategies permit the pathogen to enter the body and only fight

it once it is in circulation. Infection and morbidity rates could be reduced if effective mucosal immunity could be induced. Furthermore, there is evidence that mucosal vaccines may have a broader age range of recipients. Finally, mucosal vaccines are often administered by non-invasive means (e.g., nose drops, nasal spray, inhaled nebulizer), thus they are easier and less expensive to administer, have less need for trained personnel and no risk of needle stick injury or cross contamination (for reviews see Mestecky *et al.*, 1992, Staats *et al.*, 1994, O'Hagan 1994).

As mentioned above, the hallmark of mucosal immunity is local production of S-IgA antibodies. These constitute > 80% of all antibodies in mucosae-associated tissues and are induced, transported and regulated by mechanisms quite distinct from those of the systemic response. IgA is of primary importance to the host defense because it acts not only to resist strict mucosal pathogens but also of the many microorganisms which initially colonize mucosal surfaces but subsequently cause systemic disease. There appear to be three sites of IgA mediated mucosal defense: (i) in the lumen, where S-IgA can neutralize viruses, bacterial toxins and enzymes, and act as a mucosal barrier to prevent viral attachment, microbial adherence and adsorption of antigen; (ii) within epithelial cells where dimeric IgA can bind to intracellular antigen; (iii) within the lamina propria where dimeric IgA can complex with antigen and the immune complex thus formed transported to the lumen (Lamm *et al.*, 1992).

Many vaccines in development are composed of synthetic or recombinant antigens (peptides or polypeptides). These are considered safer than traditional attenuated or inactivated whole pathogens, however they are often poorly immunogenic and require adjuvants to enhance specific immunity. For systemic administration, aluminum precipitates (alum) may be added to the antigens to augment immune responses. Alum is currently the only adjuvant licensed for human use in most countries including the USA, however it is not suitable for delivery to mucosal surfaces. Therefore most mucosal vaccines used today contain live-attenuated organisms, and little success has been obtained with mucosal delivery of subunit vaccines.

Cholera toxin (CT) is the mucosal adjuvant most commonly used in animal models. CT is the primary enterotoxin produced by *Vibrio cholerae*. It is an 84 kilodalton polymeric protein consisting of two subunits, a monomeric A subunit and a pentameric ring shaped B subunit. The B subunit binds GM1 gangliosides at the surface of eukaryotic cells and enables

insertion of the A subunit into the cytosol, where it ADP-ribosylates GTP-binding regulatory protein associated with adenylate cyclase (Spangler, 1992).

CT enhances antigen presentation by macrophages, epithelial cells and B cells, promotes differentiation and isotype switching in B cells, and has complex inhibitory and stimulatory effects on T-cell proliferation and lymphokine production (Snider, 1995). Some groups report that CT can selectively activate Th2-type CD4+ T cells while inhibiting Th1-type cells (Takahashi *et al.*, 1996,) while others report activation of both TH1 and Th2-type CD4+ T cells (Hornquist and Lycke, 1993). Differences may be due to a number of factors including route of immunization and the nature of the antigen.

The *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (labile toxin, LT) is structurally and functionally closely related to CT, and has similar adjuvant properties (Lycke *et al.*, 1992). LT can confer immunity to co-administered antigens that are on their own non-immunogenic when administered by mucosal routes; this adjuvant effect is noted whether LT is simply mixed with or is physically coupled to the antigen (Holmgren *et al.*, 1993).

While very effective as mucosal adjuvants in animal models, CT and LT are highly toxic, and especially so in humans. Genetically detoxified mutants of both CT and LT have been developed by using site-directed mutagenesis, which, at least in animal models appear to be less toxic yet retain some adjuvanticity (e.g., LTK63 is LT with a single substitution at serine-63) (Rappuoli *et al.*, 1995, Douce *et al.*, 1994, Pizza *et al.*, 1994, De Haan *et al.*, 1996). Nevertheless, the level of adjuvanticity appears to be proportional to the level of retained toxicity, and thus there is a clear need for an alternative safe and effective mucosal adjuvant.

### Summary Of The Invention

The present invention relates to methods and products for inducing immune responses using immunostimulatory CpG dinucleotide containing oligonucleotides. In one aspect the invention is a method for inducing a mucosal immune response. The method includes the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the mucosal immune response, and wherein the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

In another aspect the invention is a method for inducing a mucosal immune response.

- 5 The method includes the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an antigen and a plasmid vector, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides.

- 10 In one embodiment the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector. In another embodiment the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector, which optionally may be the plasmid vector. In yet another embodiment the plasmid vector includes a nucleic acid sequence which operatively encodes for a cytokine. Preferably the antigen and the plasmid vector are administered orally or intranasally. In some embodiments at least 50 $\mu$ g of the  
15 plasmid vector is administered to the subject.

According to another aspect of the invention a method for inducing a mucosal immune response is provided. The method includes the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an antigen and of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and wherein the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector. Preferably the antigen and the oligonucleotide are administered orally or intranasally.

- In some embodiments of the invention the oligonucleotide has a backbone selected  
25 from the group consisting of a phosphodiester backbone and a chimeric backbone. In other embodiments the oligonucleotide has a phosphorothioate backbone. In the embodiments wherein the oligonucleotide has a phosphorothioate backbone and wherein the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector and the CpG is an oligonucleotide it is a preferred but not

limited embodiment that the plasmid and oligonucleotides are delivered with a colloidal dispersion system. In some embodiments the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems. In other embodiments the plasmid and oligonucleotide are coated onto gold particles and are delivered with a gene-gun.

A method for inducing a mucosal immune response in a subject is provided in other aspects. The method involves the step of administering to a subject an antigen and an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and administering to the subject a hormone to induce the mucosal immune response.

In one embodiment the antigen and the oligonucleotide are administered to a mucosal surface of the subject. In another embodiment the hormone is administered systemically. In one embodiment the hormone is encoded by a nucleic acid vector.

The invention in other aspects involves methods for inducing an immune response. The method involves the steps of orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

In some embodiments the antigen is administered orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally. In other embodiments the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide. Preferably the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

According to other aspects the invention is a method for inducing an immune response. The method involves the step of orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of a CpG

containing plasmid, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

5            In some embodiments the antigen is administered orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally. In other embodiments the antigen is administered simultaneously with the CpG containing plasmid. Preferably the CpG containing plasmid is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

10           The methods involve an induction of mucosal immunity. Mucosal immunity can be induced in a local and/or remote site. In some embodiments the mucosal immunity is induced in a local site and in others the mucosal immunity is induced in a remote site, or both.

15           In order to induce a mucosal immune response the CpG oligonucleotide can be administered with a prime dose, a boost dose or both. For instance the CpG oligonucleotide may be administered with a priming dose of antigen. In another embodiment the CpG oligonucleotide is administered with a boost dose of antigen. In some embodiments the subject is administered a priming dose of antigen and CpG oligonucleotide before the boost dose. In yet other embodiments the subject is administered a boost dose of antigen and CpG oligonucleotide after the priming dose.

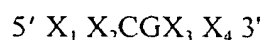
20           In another aspect the invention is a method for inducing a systemic immune response. The method involves administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a systemic immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



25           wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and administering to the mucosal surface of the subject an antigen to induce the systemic immune response. In one embodiment the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector, and wherein the antigen does not produce a systemic immune response when administered to the mucosal surface alone.



According to another aspect of the invention a method for inducing a systemic immune response is provided. The method involves the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a systemic immune response of a combination of a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant and an oligonucleotide, having a  
5 sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$  and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject an antigen to induce the systemic immune response.

In one embodiment the antigen is delivered to a mucosal surface. In another  
10 embodiment the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

The subject may be actively exposed to the antigen or passively exposed to the antigen. In one embodiment of the methods described herein the subject is actively exposed to the antigen and the antigen is delivered to a mucosal surface. In other embodiments the antigen is administered concurrently with the oligonucleotide. The antigen may be delivered  
15 alone or in conjunction with a colloidal dispersion system. In some embodiments the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems. Lipid-based systems optionally include oil-in-water emulsions, micelles, mixed micelles, or liposomes.

In other embodiments the subject is passively exposed to the antigen through  
20 environmental contact. The subject that is passively exposed to the antigen in some embodiments is a subject at risk of developing an allergic reaction, an infectious disease, or a cancer. In other embodiments the subject has an infectious disease, a cancer, an allergy or is an asthmatic.

The antigen that is passively or actively administered to the subject is any type of  
25 antigen known in the art and includes for example cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, allergens, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites. In one embodiment the antigen is derived from an infectious organism selected from the group consisting of infectious bacteria, infectious viruses,

infectious parasites, and infectious fungi.

The method may also include the step of administering a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen. Non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvants may include, for example, cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers, and ISCOMS.

In other embodiments the method includes the step of administering a cytokine or a B-7 costimulatory molecule to the subject.

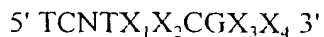
In some embodiments, the oligonucleotide is administered orally, mucosally, ocularly, vaginally, rectally, or by inhalation to a subject.

The oligonucleotide may be modified. For instance, in some embodiments at least one nucleotide has a phosphate backbone modification. The phosphate backbone modification may be a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification. In some embodiments the phosphate backbone modification occurs on the 5' side of the oligonucleotide or the 3' side of the oligonucleotide.

The oligonucleotide may be any size. Preferably the oligonucleotide has 8 to 100 nucleotides. In other embodiments the oligonucleotide is 8 to 40 nucleotides in length.

In some embodiments  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA. Preferably  $X_1X_2$  are GpA or GpT and  $X_3X_4$  are TpT. In other preferred embodiments  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  or both are purines and  $X_3$  or  $X_4$  or both are pyrimidines or  $X_1X_2$  are GpA and  $X_3$  or  $X_4$  or both are pyrimidines. In one embodiment  $X_2$  is a T and  $X_3$  is a pyrimidine. The oligonucleotide may be isolated or synthetic.

In some embodiments the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about 0-25 nucleotides.

In other aspects, the invention encompasses pharmaceutical compositions for orally, intranasally, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally administering CpG oligonucleotides or CpG plasmids. In one aspect the composition is an oral formulation of a CpG oligonucleotide in a buffer for neutralizing biological acids. In another aspect the composition is an intranasal formulation of a CpG oligonucleotide in an aerosol. In other aspects the composition is a vaginal or rectal formulation of a CpG oligonucleotide in a suppository or other vehicle suitable for delivery to vaginal and rectal tissue. In other aspect the composition is an ocular formulation of a CpG oligonucleotide in a solution compatible with the eye. Such formulations are described herein as well as in Remingtons Pharmaceutical Sciences, which is hereby incorporated by reference.

Each of the limitations of the invention can encompass various embodiments of the invention. It is, therefore, anticipated that each of the limitations of the invention involving any one element or combinations of elements can be included in each aspect of the invention.

#### **Brief Description Of The Drawings**

**Figure 1** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on total IgG titers of anti-HBS, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants.

**Figure 2** is a graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on total IgG titers of anti-Hbs, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants and at 8 weeks mice were boosted in the same manner as prime.

**Figure 3** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgG isotype, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants (1  $\mu$ g) and at 8 weeks mice were boosted in the same manner as prime.

**Figure 4** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on HBsAg specific CTL response, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (10  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants at different doses (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) and four weeks after immunization mice were killed by Halothane overdose, splenocytes isolated and HBsAg specific CTL activity measured.

**Figure 5** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in lung washes, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) adjuvants at different doses (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) and four weeks after immunization (or after boost for group marked by \*) mice were killed by Halothane overdose and lungs were washed with 1ml TBS.

**Figure 6** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in fecal pellet solutions, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) at different doses (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) and four weeks after immunization (or after boost for group marked by \*) mice were isolated for 24 hr and fecal pellets were collected and resuspended in TBS at 0.1 mg/ml.

**Figure 7** is a graph depicting the effect of different adjuvants on total IgG titers of anti-HBs, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT), *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LT), the B subunit of Cholera toxin (CTB), a detoxified mutant of *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LTK63), CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) or non-CpG control oligonucleotide (motif #1982, SEQ ID NO. 90) as adjuvants (1, 10 or 500  $\mu$ g). In groups which responded, all mice gave titers > 10, except in the case of 10  $\mu$ g LT where only 1/5 mice responded.

**Figure 8** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies on total IgG

titers of anti-HBs, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. ); or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Numbers at the top of each bar represent the IgG<sub>2</sub>/IgG<sub>1</sub> ratio.

**Figure 9** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on HBsAg specific CTL response, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), and 4 weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose, splenocytes isolated and HBsAg specific CTL activity measured.

**Figure 10** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on HBsAg specific T cell proliferation, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90 ), and 4 weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose, splenocytes isolated and HBsAg specific T

cell proliferation measured.

**Figure 11** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in lung washes, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Four weeks after boost mice were killed by Halothane overdose and lungs were washed with 1 ml TBS.

**Figure 12** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in saliva, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Four weeks after boost mice were injected with 100 µl 0.5 % Pilocarpine hydrochloride solution and saliva collected.

**Figure 13** is a bar graph depicting the effect of different prime/boost strategies with different adjuvants on anti-HBs IgA titers in fecal pellet solutions, wherein BALB/c mice were immunized: (i) by IM injection with HBsAg (1 µg) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime, or by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90), or (ii) by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1 µg) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT) and /or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826,

SEQ ID NO. 90) and boosted at 4 weeks as prime or by IM injection with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) in combination with alum plus CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90). Four weeks after boost mice were isolated for 24 hr and fecal pellets were collected and resuspended in TBS at 0.1 mg/ml.

5

### **Brief Description Of The Tables**

**Table 1** lists immunostimulatory oligonucleotide sequences.

10        **Table 2** lists the effect of different adjuvants on HBsAg-specific antibody isotypes.

"BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT), *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LT), the B subunit of Cholera toxin (CTB), a detoxified mutant of *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LTK63) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) as adjuvants.

15        <sup>b</sup>Values represent the group geometric mean (GMT) of the ELISA end-point dilution titer for HBsAg-specific IgG1 or IgG2a antibodies in plasma taken 4 wk after immunization. Titers were defined as the highest plasma dilution resulting in an absorbance value two times that of non-immune plasma, with a cut-off value of 0.05.

20        <sup>c</sup>The IgG2a to IgG1 ratios (IgG2a:IgG1) are reported, with a value >1 indicating a predominantly Th-1 like response.

<sup>d</sup>N/A: Not applicable since no antibody responses detected.

<sup>e</sup>=: All mice immunized with these adjuvant combinations died within 96 hours.

**Table 3** lists the effect of different adjuvants on HBsAg-specific IgA responses.

25        "BALB/c mice were immunized by IN inhalation with HBsAg (1  $\mu$ g) without or in combination with Cholera toxin (CT), *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LT), the B subunit of Cholera toxin (CTB), a detoxified mutant of *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin (LTK63) and/or CpG oligonucleotide (motif #1826, SEQ ID NO. 90) (1 or 10  $\mu$ g) as adjuvants. All groups contained 5 mice unless otherwise indicated.

30        <sup>b</sup>Values represent the geometric mean titers  $\pm$  the standard error of the mean (GMT  $\pm$  SEM) of

the ELISA end-point dilution titer for HBsAg-specific IgA antibodies in lung wash or fecal solutions taken 4 wk after immunization.

IgA titers in lung washes were defined as the highest dilution that resulted in an absorbance value (OD 450) two times greater than that of non-immune lung wash, with a cut-off value of 0.05.

5 IgA titers in fecal extracts were expressed as  $OD\ 450 \times 10^3$  above background (non-immune fecal extract). Seroconversion was defined as an endpoint titer for total IgG > 100.

“=”: All mice immunized with these adjuvant combinations died within 96 hours.

**Table 4** shows the different mucosal/parenteral prime boost/strategies used to immunize  
10 BALB/c mice and summarizes the results as to which approach induced antigen-specific systemic and mucosal immune responses.

### **Detailed Description Of The Invention**

The invention relates to methods and products for inducing immunity using  
15 immunostimulatory CpG oligonucleotides. One aspect of the invention is based on the finding that CpG oligonucleotides act as a potent mucosal adjuvants to induce immune responses at both local and remote sites against an antigen administered to the mucosal tissue. This finding is striking even in view of previous findings that CpG oligonucleotide is a potent adjuvant for systemic delivery, because with systemic delivery the protein alone induces detectable immune  
20 responses but with mucosal delivery the protein alone does not induce an immune response. As demonstrated in the Examples below, both systemic and mucosal immunity are induced by mucosal delivery of CpG oligonucleotides. The systemic immunity induced in response to CpG oligonucleotides included both humoral and cell-mediated responses to specific antigens that were not capable of inducing systemic immunity when administered alone to the mucosa.  
25 Furthermore, both CpG oligonucleotides and cholera toxin (CT, a mucosal adjuvant that induces a Th2-like response) induced CTL. This is surprising since with systemic immunization, the presence of Th2-like antibodies is normally associated with a lack of CTL (Schirmbeck *et al.*, 1995).

Additionally, CpG oligonucleotides were found to induce a mucosal response at both local



(e.g., lung) and remote (e.g., lower digestive tract) mucosal sites. Although CpG oligonucleotide was similar to CT for induction of systemic antibodies (IgG) and local mucosal antibodies (IgA), significant levels of IgA antibodies were induced at a distant mucosal site only by CpG oligonucleotide and not by CT. This was surprising because CT is generally considered to be a highly effective mucosal adjuvant. Another manner in which CpG oligonucleotide was superior to CT was with respect to the Th-type of response. As has been previously reported (Snider 1995), CT induces predominantly IgG1 isotype of antibodies, which are indicative of Th2-type response. In contrast, CpG oligonucleotide was more Th1 with predominantly IgG2a antibodies, especially after boost or when the two adjuvants were combined. Th1-type antibodies in general have better neutralizing capabilities, and furthermore, a Th2 response in the lung is highly undesirable because it is associated with asthma (Kay, 1996, Hogg, 1997). Thus the use of CpG oligonucleotide as a mucosal adjuvant has benefits that other mucosal adjuvants cannot achieve.

The discovery of CpG oligonucleotide as a safe and effective mucosal adjuvant is also advantageous because although CT is a highly effective mucosal adjuvant, it is too toxic for use in humans. A mouse (~20 g body weight) can tolerate the toxic effects of up to 10 µg of CT, however a dose as little as 1-5 µg will cause severe diarrhea in a human (~70 kg body weight) (Jertborn *et al.*, 1992). Animals inhaling CpG oligonucleotide showed no short-term signs of distress over those receiving HBsAg alone, and all recovered quickly with no apparent long-lasting effects. CpG oligonucleotide is well tolerated at very high doses (e.g., greater than 100 µg), when delivered systemically or mucosally.

Thus in one aspect the invention is a method for inducing a mucosal immune response in a subject. The method includes the step of administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the mucosal immune response. In other aspects the method involves administering a plasmid vector, having a sequence including at least the above formula instead of the oligonucleotide. The oligonucleotide, referred to herein as the oligonucleotide or the CpG oligonucleotide, is not a plasmid vector. These distinctions are made clear in the

definitions set forth below. For purposes of brevity, the invention is described herein with respect to CpG oligonucleotides, but the description also applies to plasmid vectors.

The CpG oligonucleotide is particularly useful as a prophylactic vaccine for the induction of mucosal immunity of a subject at risk of developing an infection with an infectious organism or a subject at risk of developing an allergy or cancer. A "subject at risk" as used herein is a subject who has any risk of exposure to an infection causing infectious pathogen or an allergen or of developing cancer. For instance, a subject at risk may be a subject who is planning to travel to an area where a particular type of infectious agent or allergen is found or it may be a subject who through lifestyle or medical procedures is exposed to bodily fluids which may contain infectious organisms or even any subject living in an area that an infectious organism or an allergen has been identified. Subjects at risk of developing infection also include general populations to which a medical agency recommends vaccination with a particular infectious organism antigen. If the antigen is an allergen and the subject develops allergic responses to that particular antigen and the subject is exposed to the antigen, i.e., during pollen season, then that subject is at risk of exposure to the antigen. Subjects at risk of developing cancer include those with a genetic predisposition or previously treated for cancer, and those exposed to carcinogens such as tobacco, asbestos, and other chemical toxins or excessive sunlight and other types of radiation.

In addition to the use of the CpG oligonucleotide for prophylactic treatment, the invention also encompasses the use of the CpG oligonucleotide for the treatment of a subject having an infection, an allergy or a cancer.

A "subject having an infection" is a subject that has been exposed to an infectious pathogen and has acute or chronic detectable levels of the pathogen in the body. The CpG oligonucleotide can be used with an antigen to mount an antigen specific mucosal immune response that is capable of reducing the level of or eradicating the infectious pathogen. An infectious disease, as used herein, is a disease arising from the presence of a foreign microorganism in the body. It is particularly important to develop effective vaccine strategies and treatments to protect the body's mucosal surfaces, which are the primary site of pathogenic entry.

A "subject having an allergy" is a subject that has or is at risk of developing an allergic reaction in response to an allergen. An "allergy" refers to acquired hypersensitivity to a substance

(allergen). Allergic conditions include but are not limited to eczema, allergic rhinitis or coryza, hay fever, conjunctivitis, bronchial asthma, urticaria (hives) and food allergies, and other atopic conditions.

5       Currently, allergic diseases are generally treated by the injection of small doses of antigen followed by subsequent increasing dosage of antigen. It is believed that this procedure induces tolerization to the allergen to prevent further allergic reactions. These methods, however, can take several years to be effective and are associated with the risk of side effects such as anaphylactic shock. The methods of the invention avoid these problems.

10       Allergies are generally caused by IgE antibody generation against harmless allergens. The cytokines that are induced by mucosal administration of unmethylated CpG oligonucleotides are predominantly of a class called "Th1" (examples are IL-12 and IFN- $\gamma$ ) and these induce both humoral and cellular immune responses. The types of antibodies associated with a Th1 response are generally more protective because they have high neutralization and opsonization capabilities. The other major type of immune response, which is associated with the production of IL-4, IL-5  
15       and IL-10 cytokines, is termed as Th2 immune response. Th2 responses involve solely antibodies and these have less protective effect against infection and some Th2 isotypes (e.g., IgE) are associated with allergy. In general, it appears that allergic diseases are mediated by Th2 type immune responses while Th1 responses provide the best protection against infection, although excessive Th1 responses are associated with autoimmune disease. Based on the ability of the  
20       CpG oligonucleotides to shift the immune response in a subject from a Th2 (which is associated with production of IgE antibodies and allergy) to a Th1 response (which is protective against allergic reactions), an effective dose for inducing a mucosal immune response of a CpG oligonucleotide can be administered to a subject to treat or prevent an allergy.

25       Thus, the CpG oligonucleotide has significant therapeutic utility in the treatment of allergic conditions such as asthma. Th2 cytokines, especially IL-4 and IL-5 are elevated in the airways of asthmatic subjects. These cytokines promote important aspects of the asthmatic inflammatory response, including IgE isotope switching, eosinophil chemotaxis and activation and mast cell growth. Th1 cytokines, especially IFN- $\gamma$  and IL-12, can suppress the formation of Th2 clones and production of Th2 cytokines. "Asthma" refers to a disorder of the respiratory  
30       system characterized by inflammation, narrowing of the airways and increased reactivity of the

airways to inhaled agents. Asthma is frequently, although not exclusively associated with atopic or allergic symptoms.

A "subject having a cancer" is a subject that has detectable cancerous cells. The cancer may be a malignant or non-malignant cancer. Cancers or tumors include but are not limited to biliary tract cancer; brain cancer; breast cancer; cervical cancer; choriocarcinoma; colon cancer; endometrial cancer; esophageal cancer; gastric cancer; intraepithelial neoplasms; lymphomas; liver cancer; lung cancer (e.g. small cell and non-small cell); melanoma; neuroblastomas; oral cancer; ovarian cancer; pancreas cancer; prostate cancer; rectal cancer; sarcomas; skin cancer; testicular cancer; thyroid cancer; and renal cancer, as well as other carcinomas and sarcomas.

A "subject" shall mean a human or vertebrate animal including but not limited to a dog, cat, horse, cow, pig, sheep, goat, chicken, primate, e.g., monkey, fish (aquaculture species), e.g. salmon, rat, and mouse.

A CpG oligonucleotide is an oligonucleotide which includes at least one unmethylated CpG dinucleotide. An oligonucleotide containing at least one unmethylated CpG dinucleotide is a nucleic acid molecule which contains an unmethylated cytosine-guanine dinucleotide sequence (i.e. "CpG DNA" or DNA containing a 5' cytosine followed by 3' guanosine and linked by a phosphate bond) and activates the immune system. The CpG oligonucleotides can be double-stranded or single-stranded. Generally, double-stranded molecules are more stable *in vivo*, while single-stranded molecules have increased immune activity.

The terms "nucleic acid" and "oligonucleotide" are used interchangeably to mean multiple nucleotides (i.e. molecules comprising a sugar (e.g. ribose or deoxyribose) linked to a phosphate group and to an exchangeable organic base, which is either a substituted pyrimidine (e.g. cytosine (C), thymine (T) or uracil (U)) or a substituted purine (e.g. adenine (A) or guanine (G)). As used herein, the terms refer to oligoribonucleotides as well as oligodeoxyribonucleotides. The terms shall also include polynucleosides (i.e. a polynucleotide minus the phosphate) and any other organic base containing polymer. Nucleic acid molecules can be obtained from existing nucleic acid sources (e.g. genomic or cDNA), but are preferably synthetic (e.g. produced by oligonucleotide synthesis). The entire CpG oligonucleotide can be unmethylated or portions may be unmethylated but at least the C of the 5' CG 3' must be unmethylated.

The methods of the invention may be accomplished by administering a CpG containing

oligonucleotide or a CpG containing plasmid vector to the subject to induce a mucosal immune response. As used herein the terms a "CpG oligonucleotide" and a "plasmid expression vector" are mutually exclusive. The terms "CpG oligonucleotide" or "CpG nucleic acid" are used to refer to any CpG containing nucleic acid except for a CpG containing plasmid vector. A plasmid expression vector is a nucleic acid molecule which includes at least a promoter and a gene encoding a peptide or peptide fragment. The plasmid expression vector includes a nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide which is operatively linked to a gene expression sequence which directs the expression of the peptide within a eukaryotic cell. The "gene expression sequence" is any regulatory nucleotide sequence, such as a promoter sequence or promoter-enhancer combination, which facilitates the efficient transcription and translation of the peptide to which it is operatively linked. The gene expression sequence may, for example, be a mammalian or viral promoter, such as a constitutive or inducible promoter. Such constructs are well known to those of skill in the art.

In one preferred embodiment the invention provides a CpG oligonucleotide represented by at least the formula:



wherein at least one nucleotide separates consecutive CpGs;  $X_1$  is adenine, guanine, or thymine;  $X_2$  is cytosine, adenine, or thymine; N is any nucleotide and  $N_1$  and  $N_2$  are nucleic acid sequences composed of from about 0-25 N's each.

In another embodiment the invention provides an isolated CpG oligonucleotide represented by at least the formula:



wherein at least one nucleotide separates consecutive CpGs;  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA; N is any nucleotide and  $N_1$  and  $N_2$  are nucleic acid sequences composed of from about 0-25 N's each. Preferably  $X_1X_2$  are GpA or GpT and  $X_3X_4$  are TpT. In other preferred embodiments  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  or both are purines and  $X_3$  or  $X_4$  or both are pyrimidines or  $X_1X_2$  are GpA and  $X_3$  or  $X_4$  or both are pyrimidines. In a

preferred embodiment N<sub>1</sub> and N<sub>2</sub> of the nucleic acid do not contain a CCGG or CGCG quadmer or more than one CCG or CGG trimer. The effect of a CCGG or CGCG quadmer or more than one CCG or CGG trimer depends in part on the status of the oligonucleotide backbone. For instance, if the oligonucleotide has a phosphodiester backbone or a chimeric backbone the inclusion of these sequences in the oligonucleotide will only have minimal if any affect on the biological activity of the oligonucleotide. If the backbone is completely phosphorothioate or significantly phosphorothioate then the inclusion of these sequences may have more influence on the biological activity or the kinetics of the biological activity. In the case when the CpG oligonucleotide is administered in conjunction with an antigen which is encoded in a nucleic acid vector, it is preferred that the backbone of the CpG oligonucleotide be phosphodiester or chimeric. It can be completely phosphorothioate if the oligonucleotide is delivered directly to the cell. The cell may have a problem taking up a completely phosphorothioate oligonucleotide in the presence of a plasmid vector. Thus when both a vector and an oligonucleotide are delivered to a subject, it is preferred that the oligonucleotide have a phosphodiester or chimeric backbone or have a phosphorothioate backbone but be associated with a vehicle that delivers it directly into the cell. Such vehicles are known in the art and include, for example, liposomes and gene guns.

In another preferred embodiment the CpG oligonucleotide has the sequence 5'TCN<sub>1</sub>TX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>CGX<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>3'.

Preferably the CpG oligonucleotides of the invention include X<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub> selected from the group consisting of GpT, GpG, GpA and ApA and X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub> is selected from the group consisting of TpT, CpT and TpC. For facilitating uptake into cells, CpG containing oligonucleotides are preferably in the range of 8 to 30 bases in length. However, nucleic acids of any size greater than 8 nucleotides (even many kb long) are capable of inducing an immune response according to the invention if sufficient immunostimulatory motifs are present, since larger nucleic acids are degraded into oligonucleotides inside of cells. Preferred synthetic oligonucleotides do not include a CCGG or CGCG quadmer or more than one CCG or CGG trimer at or near the 5' and/or 3' terminals. Stabilized oligonucleotides, where the oligonucleotide incorporates a phosphate backbone modification, as discussed in more detail below are also preferred. The modification may be, for example, a phosphorothioate or

phosphorodithioate modification. Preferably, the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the nucleic acid for example, at the first two nucleotides of the 5' end of the oligonucleotide. Further, the phosphate backbone modification may occur at the 3' end of the nucleic acid for example, at the last five nucleotides of the 3' end of the nucleic acid.

5 Alternatively the oligonucleotide may be completely or partially modified.

Preferably the CpG oligonucleotide is in the range of between 8 and 100 and more preferably between 8 and 30 nucleotides in size. Alternatively, CpG oligonucleotides can be produced on a large scale in plasmids and degraded into oligonucleotides.

The CpG oligonucleotide may be directly administered to the subject or may be  
10 administered in conjunction with a nucleic acid delivery complex. A "nucleic acid delivery complex" shall mean a nucleic acid molecule associated with (e.g. ionically or covalently bound to; or encapsulated within) a targeting means (e.g. a molecule that results in higher affinity binding to target cell (e.g. dendritic cell surfaces and/or increased cellular uptake by target cells). Examples of nucleic acid delivery complexes include nucleic acids associated  
15 with: a sterol (e.g. cholesterol), a lipid (e.g. a cationic lipid, virosome or liposome), or a target cell specific binding agent (e.g. a ligand recognized by target cell specific receptor). Preferred complexes may be sufficiently stable *in vivo* to prevent significant uncoupling prior to internalization by the target cell. However, the complex can be cleavable under appropriate conditions within the cell so that the nucleic acid is released in a functional form.

20 Delivery vehicles for delivering antigen to mucosal surfaces have been described. The CpG oligonucleotide and/or the antigen may be administered alone (e.g. in saline or buffer) or using any delivery vehicles known in the art. For instance the following delivery vehicles have been described: Cochleates (Gould-Fogerite et al., 1994, 1996); Emulsomes (Vancott et al., 1998, Lowell et al., 1997); ISCOMs (Mowat et al., 1993, Carlsson et al., 1991, Hu et.,  
25 1998, Morein et al., 1999); Liposomes (Childers et al., 1999, Michalek et al., 1989, 1992, de Haan 1995a, 1995b); Live bacterial vectors (e.g., *Salmonella*, *Escherichia coli*, *Bacillus calmatte-guerin*, *Shigella*, *Lactobacillus*) (Hone et al., 1996, Pouwels et al., 1998, Chatfield et al., 1993, Stover et al., 1991, Nugent et al., 1998); Live viral vectors (e.g., Vaccinia, adenovirus, Herpes Simplex) (Gallichan et al., 1993, 1995, Moss et al., 1996, Nugent et al.,  
30 1998, Flexner et al., 1988, Morrow et al., 1999); Microspheres (Gupta et al., 1998, Jones et

al., 1996, Maloy et al., 1994, Moore et al., 1995, O'Hagan et al., 1994, Eldridge et al., 1989); Nucleic acid vaccines (Fynan et al., 1993, Kuklin et al., 1997, Sasaki et al., 1998, Okada et al., 1997, Ishii et al., 1997); Polymers (e.g. carboxymethylcellulose, chitosan) (Hamajima et al., 1998, Jabbal-Gill et al., 1998); Polymer rings (Wyatt et al., 1998); Proteosomes (Vancott et al., 1998, Lowell et al., 1988, 1996, 1997); Sodium Fluoride (Hashi et al., 1998); Transgenic plants (Tacket et al., 1998, Mason et al., 1998, Haq et al., 1995); Virosomes (Gluck et al., 1992, Mengiardi et al., 1995, Cryz et al., 1998); Virus-like particles (Jiang et al., 1999, Leibl et al., 1998). Other delivery vehicles are known in the art and some additional examples are provided below in the discussion of vectors.

“Palindromic sequence” shall mean an inverted repeat (i.e. a sequence such as ABCDEE'D'C'B'A' in which A and A' are bases capable of forming the usual Watson-Crick base pairs. *In vivo*, such sequences may form double-stranded structures. In one embodiment the CpG oligonucleotide contains a palindromic sequence. A palindromic sequence used in this context refers to a palindrome in which the CpG is part of the palindrome, and preferably is the center of the palindrome. In another embodiment the CpG oligonucleotide is free of a palindrome. A CpG oligonucleotide that is free of a palindrome is one in which the CpG dinucleotide is not part of a palindrome. Such an oligonucleotide may include a palindrome in which the CpG is not part of the palindrome.

A “stabilized nucleic acid molecule” shall mean a nucleic acid molecule that is relatively resistant to *in vivo* degradation (e.g. via an exo- or endo-nuclease). Stabilization can be a function of length or secondary structure. Unmethylated CpG oligonucleotides that are tens to hundreds of kbs long are relatively resistant to *in vivo* degradation. For shorter CpG oligonucleotides, secondary structure can stabilize and increase their effect. For example, if the 3' end of an oligonucleotide has self-complementarity to an upstream region, so that it can fold back and form a sort of stem loop structure, then the oligonucleotide becomes stabilized and therefore exhibits more activity.

Preferred stabilized oligonucleotides of the instant invention have a modified backbone. It has been demonstrated that modification of the oligonucleotide backbone provides enhanced activity of the CpG oligonucleotides when administered *in vivo*. CpG constructs, including at least two phosphorothioate linkages at the 5' end of the



oligonucleotide in multiple phosphorothioate linkages at the 3' end, preferably 5, provides maximal activity and protected the oligonucleotide from degradation by intracellular exo- and endo-nucleases. Other modified oligonucleotides include phosphodiester modified oligonucleotide, combinations of phosphodiester and phosphorothioate oligonucleotide, methylphosphonate, methylphosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, and combinations thereof. Each of these combinations and their particular effects on immune cells is discussed in more detail in PCT Published Patent Applications claiming priority to U.S. Serial Nos. 08/738,652 and 08/960,774, filed on October 30, 1996 and October 30, 1997 respectively, the entire contents of which is hereby incorporated by reference. It is believed that these modified oligonucleotides may show more stimulatory activity due to enhanced nuclease resistance, increased cellular uptake, increased protein binding, and/or altered intracellular localization.

Both phosphorothioate and phosphodiester oligonucleotides containing CpG motifs are active in immune cells. However, based on the concentration needed to induce CpG specific effects, the nuclease resistant phosphorothioate backbone CpG oligonucleotides are more potent (2  $\mu$ g/ml for the phosphorothioate vs. a total of 90  $\mu$ g/ml for phosphodiester).

Other stabilized oligonucleotides include: nonionic DNA analogs, such as alkyl- and aryl-phosphates (in which the charged phosphonate oxygen is replaced by an alkyl or aryl group), phosphodiester and alkylphosphotriesters, in which the charged oxygen moiety is alkylated. Oligonucleotides which contain diol, such as tetraethyleneglycol or hexaethyleneglycol, at either or both termini have also been shown to be substantially resistant to nuclease degradation.

The nucleic acid sequences of the invention which are useful as mucosal adjuvants are those broadly described above and disclosed in PCT Published Patent Applications claiming priority to U.S. Serial Nos. 08/738,652 and 08/960,774, filed on October 30, 1996 and October 30, 1997 respectively. Exemplary sequences include but are not limited to those immunostimulatory sequences shown in Table 1.

**Table 1 -sequences**

GCTAGACGTTAGCGT;	(SEQ ID NO: 1)
GCTAGATGTTAGCGT;	(SEQ ID NO: 2)
GCTAGACGTTAGCGT;	(SEQ ID NO: 3)

	GCTAGACGTTAGCGT;	(SEQ ID NO: 4)
	GCATGACGTTGAGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 5)
	ATGGAAGGTCCAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 6)
	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 7)
5	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 8)
	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 9)
	ATGGAAGGTCCAACGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 10)
	GAGAACGCTGGACCTTCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 11)
	GAGAACGCTCGACCTTCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 12)
10	GAGAACGCTCGACCTTCGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 13)
	GAGAACGCTGGACCTTCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 14)
	GAGAACGATGGACCTTCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 15)
	GAGAACGCTCCAGCACTGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 16)
	TCCATGTCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 17)
15	TCCATGTCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 18)
	TCCATGACGTTTCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 19)
	TCCATGTCGGTCCTGCTGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 20)
	TCAACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 21)
	TCAGCGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 22)
20	TCATCGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 23)
	TCTTCGAA;	(SEQ ID NO: 24)
	CAACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 25)
	CCAACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 26)
	AACGTTCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 27)
25	TCAACGTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 28)
	ATGGACTCTCCAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 29)
	ATGGAAGGTCCAACGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 30)
	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 31)
	ATGGAGGCTCCATCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 32)
30	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 33)
	ATCGACTCTCGAGCGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 34)
	TCCATGTCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 35)
	TCCATGCCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 36)
	TCCATGGCGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 37)
35	TCCATGACGGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 38)
	TCCATGTCGATCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 39)
	TCCATGTCGCTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 40)
	TCCATGTCGTCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 41)
	TCCATGACGTGCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 42)
40	TCCATAACGTTTCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 43)
	TCCATGACGTCCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 44)
	TCCATCACGTGCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 45)
	GGGGTCAACGTTGACGGGG;	(SEQ ID NO: 46)
	GGGGTCAGTCGTGACGGGG;	(SEQ ID NO: 47)
45	GCTAGACGTTAGTGT;	(SEQ ID NO: 48)

	TCCATGTCGTTCCCTGATGCT;	(SEQ ID NO: 49)
	ACCATGGACGATCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 50)
	TCTCCCAGCGTGCGCCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 51)
	ACCATGGACGAACTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 52)
5	ACCATGGACGAGCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 53)
	ACCATGGACGACCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 54)
	ACCATGGACGTACTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 55)
	ACCATGGACGGTCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 56)
	ACCATGGACGTTCTGTTTCCCCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 57)
10	CACGTTGAGGGGCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 58)
	TCAGCGTGCGCC;	(SEQ ID NO: 59)
	ATGACGTTCCCTGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 60)
	TCTCCCAGCGGGCGCAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 61)
	TCCATGTCGTTCCCTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 62)
15	TCCATAGCGTTCCTAGCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 63)
	TCGTCGCTGTCTCCCCTTCTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 64)
	TCCTGACGTTCCCTGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 65)
	TCCTGTCGTTCCCTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 66)
	TCCATGTCGTTTTTGTTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 67)
20	TCCTGTCGTTCCCTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 68)
	TCCTGTCGTTCCCTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 69)
	TCCTGTCGTTTTTGTTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 70)
	TCGTCGCTGTCTGCCCTTCTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 71)
	TCGTCGCTGTTGTCGTTTCTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 72)
25	TCCATGCGTGCGTGCGTTTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 73)
	TCCATGCGTTGCGTTGCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 74)
	TCCACGACGTTTTTCGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 75)
	TCGTCGTTGTCGTTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 76)
	TCGTCGTTTTTGTTCGTTTTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 77)
30	TCGTCGTTGTCGTTTTTGTTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 78)
	GCGTGCGTTGTCGTTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 79)
	TGTCGTTTTGTCGTTTGTTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 80)
	TGTCGTTGTCGTTGTCGTTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 81)
	TGTCGTTGTCGTTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 82)
35	TCGTCGTCGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 83)
	TGTCGTTGTCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 84)
	TCCATAGCGTTCCTAGCGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 85)
	TCCATGACGTTCCCTGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 86)
	GTCGYT;	(SEQ ID NO: 87)
40	TGTCGYT;	(SEQ ID NO: 88)
	AGCTATGACGTTCCAAGG;	(SEQ ID NO: 89)
	TCCATGACGTTCCCTGACGTT;	(SEQ ID NO: 90)
	ATCGACTCTCGAACGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 92)
	TCCATGTCGGTCCCTGACGCA;	(SEQ ID NO: 93)
45	TCTTCGAT;	(SEQ ID NO: 94)
	ATAGGAGGTCCAACGTTCTC;	(SEQ ID NO: 95)

The stimulation index of a particular immunostimulatory CpG DNA can be tested in various immune cell assays. Preferably, the stimulation index of the CpG oligonucleotide with regard to B cell proliferation is at least about 5, preferably at least about 10, more preferably at least about 15 and most preferably at least about 20 as determined by incorporation of  $^3\text{H}$  uridine in a murine B cell culture, which has been contacted with 20  $\mu\text{M}$  of oligonucleotide for 20h at 37°C and has been pulsed with 1  $\mu\text{Ci}$  of  $^3\text{H}$  uridine; and harvested and counted 4h later as described in detail in PCT Published Patent Applications claiming priority to U.S. Serial Nos. 08/738,652 and 08/960,774, filed on October 30, 1996 and October 30, 1997 respectively. For use *in vivo*, for example, it is important that the CpG oligonucleotide be capable of effectively inducing IgA expression.

The CpG oligonucleotide can be administered in conjunction with another mucosal adjuvant. It was discovered according to the invention that the combination of a CpG oligonucleotide and a mucosal adjuvant produced a synergistic immune response. When the CpG oligonucleotide is administered in conjunction with another adjuvant, the CpG oligonucleotide can be administered before, after, and/or simultaneously with the other mucosal adjuvant. For instance, the CpG oligonucleotide may be administered with a priming dose of antigen. Either or both of the adjuvants may then be administered with the boost dose. Alternatively, the CpG oligonucleotide may be administered with a boost dose of antigen. Either or both of the adjuvants may then be administered with the prime dose.

Additionally it has been discovered that mucosal immunity can be induced as long as one of the dosages of CpG oligonucleotide is administered to a mucosal surface. Other doses can be administered systemically or mucosally without affecting the induction of the immune response. For example, the subject may be primed by mucosal delivery of antigen and CpG oligonucleotide, with or without other mucosal adjuvants and boosted by a parenteral (e.g., intramuscular, intradermal or subcutaneous) route of delivery of antigen alone, with CpG oligonucleotides, with a non-oligonucleotide adjuvant or a combination of adjuvants that may or may not include CpG oligonucleotide. Alternatively, the prime dose may be given parenterally and boosted mucosally using the invention. All of these approaches can induce strong systemic and mucosal immune responses. Thus the methods of the invention encompass the administration of at least one dose, either prime or boost or both, to the

mucosal surface. The other doses of CpG oligonucleotide may be administered mucosally or systemically.

A "prime dose" is the first dose of antigen administered to the subject. In the case of a subject that has an infection the prime dose may be the initial exposure of the subject to the infectious microbe (passive exposure) and thus the subsequent purposeful administration of antigen (active exposure) with CpG oligonucleotide becomes the boost dose. A "boost dose" is a second or third, etc. dose of antigen administered to a subject that has already been exposed to the antigen. In some cases the prime dose administered with the CpG oligonucleotide is so effective that a boost dose is not required to protect a subject at risk of infection from being infected.

The subject is exposed to the antigen. As used herein, the term "exposed to" refers to either the active step of contacting the subject with an antigen or the passive exposure of the subject to the antigen *in vivo*. Methods for the active exposure of a subject to an antigen are well-known in the art. In general, an antigen is administered directly to the subject by any means such as intravenous, intramuscular, oral, transdermal, mucosal, intranasal, intratracheal, or subcutaneous administration. The antigen can be administered systemically or locally. Methods for administering the antigen and the CpG oligonucleotide are described in more detail below. A subject is passively exposed to an antigen if an antigen becomes available for exposure to the immune cells in the body. A subject may be passively exposed to an antigen, for instance, by entry of a foreign pathogen into the body or by the development of a tumor cell expressing a foreign antigen on its surface. When a subject is passively exposed to an antigen it is preferred in some embodiments that the CpG oligonucleotide is an oligonucleotide of 8-100 nucleotides in length and/or has a phosphate modified backbone.

The methods in which a subject is passively exposed to an antigen can be particularly dependent on timing of CpG oligonucleotide. For instance, in a subject at risk of developing a cancer or an infectious disease or an allergic or asthmatic response, the subject may be administered the CpG oligonucleotide on a regular basis when that risk is greatest, i.e., during allergy season or after exposure to a cancer causing agent. Additionally the CpG oligonucleotide may be administered to travelers before they travel to foreign lands where they are at risk of exposure to infectious agents. Likewise the CpG oligonucleotide and may

be administered to soldiers or civilians at risk of exposure to biowarfare to induce a mucosal immune response to the antigen when and if the subject is exposed to it.

An "antigen" as used herein is a molecule capable of provoking an immune response. Antigens include but are not limited to cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites and allergens. The term antigen broadly includes any type of molecule which is recognized by a host immune system as being foreign. Antigens include but are not limited to cancer antigens, microbial antigens, and allergens.

A "cancer antigen" as used herein is a compound, such as a peptide or protein, associated with a tumor or cancer cell surface and which is capable of provoking an immune response when expressed on the surface of an antigen presenting cell in the context of an MHC molecule. Cancer antigens can be prepared from cancer cells either by preparing crude extracts of cancer cells, for example, as described in Cohen, et al., 1994, *Cancer Research*, 54:1055, by partially purifying the antigens, by recombinant technology, or by de novo synthesis of known antigens. Cancer antigens include antigens that are recombinantly an immunogenic portion of or a whole tumor or cancer. Such antigens can be isolated or prepared recombinantly or by any other means known in the art.

A "microbial antigen" as used herein is an antigen of a microorganism and includes but is not limited to infectious virus, infectious bacteria, infectious parasites, and infectious fungi. Such antigens include the intact microorganism as well as natural isolates and fragments or derivatives thereof and also synthetic compounds which are identical to or similar to natural microorganism antigens and induce an immune response specific for that microorganism. A compound is similar to a natural microorganism antigen if it induces an immune response (humoral and/or cellular) to a natural microorganism antigen. Such antigens are used routinely in the art and are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

Examples of infectious virus that have been found in humans include but are not limited to: *Retroviridae* (e.g. human immunodeficiency viruses, such as HIV-1 (also referred to as HTLV-III, LAV or HTLV-III/LAV, or HIV-III; and other isolates, such as HIV-LP; *Picornaviridae* (e.g. polio viruses, hepatitis A virus; enteroviruses, human Coxsackie viruses.

rhinoviruses, echoviruses); *Caliciviridae* (e.g. strains that cause gastroenteritis); *Togaviridae* (e.g. equine encephalitis viruses, rubella viruses); *Flaviridae* (e.g. dengue viruses, encephalitis viruses, yellow fever viruses); *Coronaviridae* (e.g. coronaviruses); *Rhabdoviridae* (e.g. vesicular stomatitis viruses, rabies viruses); *Coronaviridae* (e.g. coronaviruses);

5 *Rhabdoviridae* (e.g. vesicular stomatitis viruses, rabies viruses); *Filoviridae* (e.g. ebola viruses); *Paramyxoviridae* (e.g. parainfluenza viruses, mumps virus, measles virus, respiratory syncytial virus); *Orthomyxoviridae* (e.g. influenza viruses); *Bunyaviridae* (e.g. Hantaan viruses, bunya viruses, phleboviruses and Nairo viruses); *Arenaviridae* (hemorrhagic fever viruses); *Reoviridae* (e.g. reoviruses, orbiviruses and rotaviruses); *Birnaviridae*;

10 *Hepadnaviridae* (Hepatitis B virus); *Parvoviridae* (parvoviruses); *Papovaviridae* (papilloma viruses, polyoma viruses); *Adenoviridae* (most adenoviruses); *Herpesviridae* (herpes simplex virus (HSV) 1 and 2, varicella zoster virus, cytomegalovirus (CMV), herpes virus); *Poxviridae* (variola viruses, vaccinia viruses, pox viruses); and *Iridoviridae* (e.g. African swine fever virus); and unclassified viruses (e.g. the etiological agents of Spongiform encephalopathies,

15 the agent of delta hepatitis (thought to be a defective satellite of hepatitis B virus), the agents of non-A, non-B hepatitis (class 1 = internally transmitted; class 2 = parenterally transmitted (i.e. Hepatitis C); Norwalk and related viruses, and astroviruses).

Both gram negative and gram positive bacteria serve as antigens in vertebrate animals. Such gram positive bacteria include, but are not limited to *Pasteurella* species, *Staphylococci*

20 species, and *Streptococcus* species. Gram negative bacteria include, but are not limited to, *Escherichia coli*, *Pseudomonas* species, and *Salmonella* species. Specific examples of infectious bacteria include but are not limited to: *Helicobacter pylori*, *Borrelia burgdorferi*, *Legionella pneumophila*, *Mycobacteria* spp. (e.g. *M. tuberculosis*, *M. avium*, *M. intracellulare*, *M. kansasii*, *M. goodii*), *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*,

25 *Neisseria meningitidis*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Streptococcus pyogenes* (Group A Streptococcus), *Streptococcus agalactiae* (Group B Streptococcus), *Streptococcus* (viridans group), *Streptococcus faecalis*, *Streptococcus bovis*, *Streptococcus* (anaerobic spp.), *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, pathogenic *Campylobacter* sp., *Enterococcus* sp., *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Bacillus anthracis*, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, *Corynebacterium* sp.,

30 *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae*, *Clostridium perfringens*, *Clostridium tetani*, *Enterobacter*

*aerogenes*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Pasturella multocida*, *Bacteroides* sp., *Fusobacterium nucleatum*, *Streptobacillus moniliformis*, *Treponema pallidum*, *Treponema pertenue*, *Leptospira*, *Rickettsia*, and *Actinomyces israeli*.

Examples of infectious fungi include: *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Coccidioides immitis*, *Blastomyces dermatitidis*, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Candida albicans*. Other infectious organisms (i.e., protists) include: *Plasmodium* such as *Plasmodium falciparum*, *Plasmodium malariae*, *Plasmodium ovale*, and *Plasmodium vivax* and *Toxoplasma gondii*.

Other medically relevant microorganisms have been described extensively in the literature, e.g., see C.G.A Thomas, *Medical Microbiology*, Bailliere Tindall, Great Britain 1983, the entire contents of which is hereby incorporated by reference.

Although many of the microbial antigens described above relate to human disorders, the invention is also useful for treating other nonhuman vertebrates. Nonhuman vertebrates are also capable of developing infections which can be prevented or treated with the CpG oligonucleotides disclosed herein. For instance, in addition to the treatment of infectious human diseases, the methods of the invention are useful for treating infections of animals.

As used herein, the term "treat", "treated", or "treating" when used with respect to an infectious disease refers to a prophylactic treatment which increases the resistance of a subject (a subject at risk of infection) to infection with a pathogen or, in other words, decreases the likelihood that the subject will become infected with the pathogen as well as a treatment after the subject (a subject who has been infected) has become infected in order to fight the infection, e.g., reduce or eliminate the infection or prevent it from becoming worse.

Many vaccines for the treatment of non-human vertebrates are disclosed in Bennett, K. *Compendium of Veterinary Products*, 3rd ed. North American Compendiums, Inc., 1995. As discussed above, antigens include infectious microbes such as virus, bacteria and fungi and fragments thereof, derived from natural sources or synthetically. Infectious virus of both human and non-human vertebrates, include retroviruses, RNA viruses and DNA viruses. This group of retroviruses includes both simple retroviruses and complex retroviruses. The simple retroviruses include the subgroups of B-type retroviruses, C-type retroviruses and D-type retroviruses. An example of a B-type retrovirus is mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV).



The C-type retroviruses include subgroups C-type group A (including Rous sarcoma virus (RSV), avian leukemia virus (ALV), and avian myeloblastosis virus (AMV)) and C-type group B (including murine leukemia virus (MLV), feline leukemia virus (FeLV), murine sarcoma virus (MSV), gibbon ape leukemia virus (GALV), spleen necrosis virus (SNV),  
5 reticuloendotheliosis virus (RV) and simian sarcoma virus (SSV)). The D-type retroviruses include Mason-Pfizer monkey virus (MPMV) and simian retrovirus type 1 (SRV-1). The complex retroviruses include the subgroups of lentiviruses. T-cell leukemia viruses and the foamy viruses. Lentiviruses include HIV-1, but also include HIV-2, SIV, Visna virus, feline immunodeficiency virus (FIV), and equine infectious anemia virus (EIAV). The T-cell  
10 leukemia viruses include HTLV-1, HTLV-II, simian T-cell leukemia virus (STLV), and bovine leukemia virus (BLV). The foamy viruses include human foamy virus (HFV), simian foamy virus (SFV) and bovine foamy virus (BFV).

Examples of other RNA viruses that are antigens in vertebrate animals include, but are not limited to, the following: members of the family Reoviridae, including the genus  
15 Orthoreovirus (multiple serotypes of both mammalian and avian retroviruses), the genus Orbivirus (Bluetongue virus, Eugenangee virus, Kemerovo virus, African horse sickness virus, and Colorado Tick Fever virus), the genus Rotavirus (human rotavirus, Nebraska calf diarrhea virus, murine rotavirus, simian rotavirus, bovine or ovine rotavirus, avian rotavirus); the family Picornaviridae, including the genus Enterovirus (poliovirus, Cocksackie virus A and  
20 B, enteric cytopathic human orphan (ECHO) viruses, hepatitis A virus, Simian enteroviruses, Murine encephalomyelitis (ME) viruses, Poliovirus muris, Bovine enteroviruses, Porcine enteroviruses, the genus Cardiovirus (Encephalomyocarditis virus (EMC), Mengovirus), the genus Rhinovirus (Human rhinoviruses including at least 113 subtypes; other rhinoviruses), the genus Aphthovirus (Foot and Mouth disease (FMDV); the family Calciviridae, including  
25 Vesicular exanthema of swine virus, San Miguel sea lion virus, Feline picornavirus and Norwalk virus; the family Togaviridae, including the genus Alphavirus (Eastern equine encephalitis virus, Semliki forest virus, Sindbis virus, Chikungunya virus, O'Nyong-Nyong virus, Ross river virus, Venezuelan equine encephalitis virus, Western equine encephalitis virus), the genus Flavivirus (Mosquito borne yellow fever virus, Dengue virus, Japanese  
30 encephalitis virus, St. Louis encephalitis virus, Murray Valley encephalitis virus, West Nile

virus, Kunjin virus, Central European tick borne virus, Far Eastern tick borne virus, Kyasanur forest virus, Louping III virus, Powassan virus, Omsk hemorrhagic fever virus), the genus Rubivirus (Rubella virus), the genus Pestivirus (Mucosal disease virus, Hog cholera virus, Border disease virus); the family Bunyaviridae, including the genus Bunyavirus (Bunyamwera and related viruses, California encephalitis group viruses), the genus Phlebovirus (Sandfly fever Sicilian virus, Rift Valley fever virus), the genus Nairovirus (Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus, Nairobi sheep disease virus), and the genus Uukuvirus (Uukuniemi and related viruses); the family Orthomyxoviridae, including the genus Influenza virus (Influenza virus type A, many human subtypes); Swine influenza virus, and Avian and Equine Influenza viruses; influenza type B (many human subtypes), and influenza type C (possible separate genus); the family paramyxoviridae, including the genus Paramyxovirus (Parainfluenza virus type 1, Sendai virus, Hemadsorption virus, Parainfluenza viruses types 2 to 5, Newcastle Disease Virus, Mumps virus), the genus Morbillivirus (Measles virus, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis virus, distemper virus, Rinderpest virus), the genus Pneumovirus (respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), Bovine respiratory syncytial virus and Pneumonia virus of mice); forest virus, Sindbis virus, Chikungunya virus, O'Nyong-Nyong virus, Ross river virus, Venezuelan equine encephalitis virus, Western equine encephalitis virus), the genus Flavivirus (Mosquito borne yellow fever virus, Dengue virus, Japanese encephalitis virus, St. Louis encephalitis virus, Murray Valley encephalitis virus, West Nile virus, Kunjin virus, Central European tick borne virus, Far Eastern tick borne virus, Kyasanur forest virus, Louping III virus, Powassan virus, Omsk hemorrhagic fever virus), the genus Rubivirus (Rubella virus), the genus Pestivirus (Mucosal disease virus, Hog cholera virus, Border disease virus); the family Bunyaviridae, including the genus Bunyavirus (Bunyamwera and related viruses, California encephalitis group viruses), the genus Phlebovirus (Sandfly fever Sicilian virus, Rift Valley fever virus), the genus Nairovirus (Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus, Nairobi sheep disease virus), and the genus Uukuvirus (Uukuniemi and related viruses); the family Orthomyxoviridae, including the genus Influenza virus (Influenza virus type A, many human subtypes); Swine influenza virus, and Avian and Equine Influenza viruses; influenza type B (many human subtypes), and influenza type C (possible separate genus); the family paramyxoviridae, including the genus Paramyxovirus

(Parainfluenza virus type 1, Sendai virus, Hemadsorption virus, Parainfluenza viruses types 2 to 5, Newcastle Disease Virus, Mumps virus), the genus Morbillivirus (Measles virus, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis virus, distemper virus, Rinderpest virus), the genus Pneumovirus (respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), Bovine respiratory syncytial virus and  
5 Pneumonia virus of mice); the family Rhabdoviridae, including the genus Vesiculovirus (VSV), Chandipura virus, Flanders-Hart Park virus), the genus Lyssavirus (Rabies virus), fish Rhabdoviruses, and two probable Rhabdoviruses (Marburg virus and Ebola virus); the family Arenaviridae, including Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus (LCM), Tacaribe virus complex, and Lassa virus; the family Coronaviridae, including Infectious Bronchitis Virus (IBV).  
10 Mouse Hepatitis virus, Human enteric corona virus, and Feline infectious peritonitis (Feline coronavirus).

Illustrative DNA viruses that are antigens in vertebrate animals include, but are not limited to: the family Poxviridae, including the genus Orthopoxvirus (Variola major, Variola minor, Monkey pox Vaccinia, Cowpox, Buffalopox, Rabbitpox, Ectromelia), the genus  
15 Leporipoxvirus (Myxoma, Fibroma), the genus Avipoxvirus (Fowlpox, other avian poxvirus), the genus Capripoxvirus (sheeppox, goatpox), the genus Suipoxvirus (Swinepox), the genus Parapoxvirus (contagious postular dermatitis virus, pseudocowpox, bovine papular stomatitis virus); the family Iridoviridae (African swine fever virus, Frog viruses 2 and 3, Lymphocystis virus of fish); the family Herpesviridae, including the alpha-Herpesviruses (Herpes Simplex  
20 Types 1 and 2, Varicella-Zoster, Equine abortion virus, Equine herpes virus 2 and 3, pseudorabies virus, infectious bovine keratoconjunctivitis virus, infectious bovine rhinotracheitis virus, feline rhinotracheitis virus, infectious laryngotracheitis virus) the Beta-herpesviruses (Human cytomegalovirus and cytomegaloviruses of swine, monkeys and rodents); the gamma-herpesviruses (Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), Marek's disease virus, Herpes  
25 saimiri, Herpesvirus ateles, Herpesvirus sylvilagus, guinea pig herpes virus, Lucke tumor virus); the family Adenoviridae, including the genus Mastadenovirus (Human subgroups A,B,C,D,E and ungrouped; simian adenoviruses (at least 23 serotypes), infectious canine hepatitis, and adenoviruses of cattle, pigs, sheep, frogs and many other species, the genus Aviadenovirus (Avian adenoviruses); and non-cultivable adenoviruses; the family  
30 Papoviridae, including the genus Papillomavirus (Human papilloma viruses, bovine papilloma

viruses, Shope rabbit papilloma virus, and various pathogenic papilloma viruses of other species), the genus Polyomavirus (polyomavirus, Simian vacuolating agent (SV-40), Rabbit vacuolating agent (RKV), K virus, BK virus, JC virus, and other primate polyoma viruses such as Lymphotropic papilloma virus); the family Parvoviridae including the genus  
5 Adeno-associated viruses, the genus Parvovirus (Feline panleukopenia virus, bovine parvovirus, canine parvovirus, Aleutian mink disease virus, etc). Finally, DNA viruses may include viruses which do not fit into the above families such as Kuru and Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease viruses and chronic infectious neuropathic agents (CHINA virus).

Each of the foregoing lists is illustrative, and is not intended to be limiting.

10 In addition to the use of the CpG oligonucleotides to induce an antigen specific immune response in humans, the methods of the preferred embodiments are particularly well suited for treatment of birds such as hens, chickens, turkeys, ducks, geese, quail, and pheasant. Birds are prime targets for many types of infections.

Hatching birds are exposed to pathogenic microorganisms shortly after birth.

15 Although these birds are initially protected against pathogens by maternal derived antibodies, this protection is only temporary, and the bird's own immature immune system must begin to protect the bird against the pathogens. It is often desirable to prevent infection in young birds when they are most susceptible. It is also desirable to prevent against infection in older birds, especially when the birds are housed in closed quarters, leading to the rapid spread of disease.  
20 Thus, it is desirable to administer the CpG oligonucleotide and the non-nucleic acid adjuvant of the invention to birds to enhance an antigen-specific immune response when antigen is present.

An example of a common infection in chickens is chicken infectious anemia virus (CIAV). CIAV was first isolated in Japan in 1979 during an investigation of a Marek's  
25 disease vaccination break (Yuasa et al., 1979, Avian Dis. 23:366-385). Since that time, CIAV has been detected in commercial poultry in all major poultry producing countries (van Bulow et al., 1991, pp.690-699) in Diseases of Poultry, 9th edition, Iowa State University Press).

CIAV infection results in a clinical disease, characterized by anemia, hemorrhage and immunosuppression, in young susceptible chickens. Atrophy of the thymus and of the bone  
30 marrow and consistent lesions of CIAV-infected chickens are also characteristic of CIAV

infection. Lymphocyte depletion in the thymus, and occasionally in the bursa of Fabricius, results in immunosuppression and increased susceptibility to secondary viral, bacterial, or fungal infections which then complicate the course of the disease. The immunosuppression may cause aggravated disease after infection with one or more of Marek's disease virus (MDV), infectious bursal disease virus, reticuloendotheliosis virus, adenovirus, or reovirus. It has been reported that pathogenesis of MDV is enhanced by CIAV (DeBoer et al., 1989, p. 28 In Proceedings of the 38th Western Poultry Diseases Conference, Tempe, Ariz.). Further, it has been reported that CIAV aggravates the signs of infectious bursal disease (Rosenberger et al., 1989, Avian Dis. 33:707-713). Chickens develop an age resistance to experimentally induced disease due to CAA. This is essentially complete by the age of 2 weeks, but older birds are still susceptible to infection (Yuasa, N. et al., 1979 supra; Yuasa, N. et al., Arian Diseases 24, 202-209, 1980). However, if chickens are dually infected with CAA and an immunosuppressive agent (IBDV, MDV etc.) age resistance against the disease is delayed (Yuasa, N. et al., 1979 and 1980 supra; Bulow von V. et al., J. Veterinary Medicine 33, 93-116, 1986). Characteristics of CIAV that may potentiate disease transmission include high resistance to environmental inactivation and some common disinfectants. The economic impact of CIAV infection on the poultry industry is clear from the fact that 10% to 30% of infected birds in disease outbreaks die.

Vaccination of birds, like other vertebrate animals can be performed at any age. Normally, vaccinations are performed at up to 12 weeks of age for a live microorganism and between 14-18 weeks for an inactivated microorganism or other type of vaccine. For in ovo vaccination, vaccination can be performed in the last quarter of embryo development. The vaccine may be administered subcutaneously, by spray, orally, intraocularly, intratracheally, nasally, or by other mucosal delivery methods described herein. Thus, the CpG oligonucleotide of the invention can be administered to birds and other non-human vertebrates using routine vaccination schedules and the antigen is administered after an appropriate time period as described herein.

Cattle and livestock are also susceptible to infection. Disease which affect these animals can produce severe economic losses, especially amongst cattle. The methods of the invention can be used to protect against infection in livestock, such as cows, horses, pigs.

sheep, and goats.

Cows can be infected by bovine viruses. Bovine viral diarrhea virus (BVDV) is a small enveloped positive-stranded RNA virus and is classified, along with hog cholera virus (HOCV) and sheep border disease virus (BDV), in the pestivirus genus. Although, 5 Pestiviruses were previously classified in the Togaviridae family, some studies have suggested their reclassification within the Flaviviridae family along with the flavivirus and hepatitis C virus (HCV) groups (Francki, et al., 1991).

BVDV, which is an important pathogen of cattle can be distinguished, based on cell culture analysis, into cytopathogenic (CP) and noncytopathogenic (NCP) biotypes. The NCP 10 biotype is more widespread although both biotypes can be found in cattle. If a pregnant cow becomes infected with an NCP strain, the cow can give birth to a persistently infected and specifically immunotolerant calf that will spread virus during its lifetime. The persistently infected cattle can succumb to mucosal disease and both biotypes can then be isolated from the animal. Clinical manifestations can include abortion, teratogenesis, and respiratory 15 problems, mucosal disease and mild diarrhea. In addition, severe thrombocytopenia, associated with herd epidemics, that may result in the death of the animal has been described and strains associated with this disease seem more virulent than the classical BVDVs.

Equine herpesviruses (EHV) comprise a group of antigenically distinct biological agents which cause a variety of infections in horses ranging from subclinical to fatal disease. 20 These include Equine herpesvirus-1 (EHV-1), a ubiquitous pathogen in horses. EHV-1 is associated with epidemics of abortion, respiratory tract disease, and central nervous system disorders. Primary infection of upper respiratory tract of young horses results in a febrile illness which lasts for 8 to 10 days. Immunologically experienced mares may be reinfected via the respiratory tract without disease becoming apparent, so that abortion usually occurs 25 without warning. The neurological syndrome is associated with respiratory disease or abortion and can affect animals of either sex at any age, leading to incoordination, weakness and posterior paralysis (Telford, E. A. R. et al., Virology 189, 304-316, 1992). Other EHV's include EHV-2, or equine cytomegalovirus, EHV-3, equine coital exanthema virus, and EHV-4, previously classified as EHV-1 subtype 2.

30 Sheep and goats can be infected by a variety of dangerous microorganisms including

visna-maedi.

Primates such as monkeys, apes and macaques can be infected by simian immunodeficiency virus. Inactivated cell-virus and cell-free whole simian immunodeficiency vaccines have been reported to afford protection in macaques (Stott et al. (1990) Lancet 5 36:1538-1541; Desrosiers et al. PNAS USA (1989) 86:6353-6357; Murphey-Corb et al. (1989) Science 246:1293-1297; and Carlson et al. (1990) AIDS Res. Human Retroviruses 6:1239-1246). A recombinant HIV gp120 vaccine has been reported to afford protection in chimpanzees (Berman et al. (1990) Nature 345:622-625).

Cats, both domestic and wild, are susceptible to infection with a variety of 10 microorganisms. For instance, feline infectious peritonitis is a disease which occurs in both domestic and wild cats, such as lions, leopards, cheetahs, and jaguars. When it is desirable to prevent infection with this and other types of pathogenic organisms in cats, the methods of the invention can be used to vaccinate cats to protect them against infection.

Domestic cats may become infected with several retroviruses, including but not 15 limited to feline leukemia virus (FeLV), feline sarcoma virus (FeSV), endogenous type C oncornavirus (RD-114), and feline syncytia-forming virus (FeSFV). Of these, FeLV is the most significant pathogen, causing diverse symptoms, including lymphoreticular and myeloid neoplasms, anemias, immune mediated disorders, and an immunodeficiency syndrome which is similar to human acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). Recently, a 20 particular replication-defective FeLV mutant, designated FeLV-AIDS, has been more particularly associated with immunosuppressive properties.

The discovery of feline T-lymphotropic lentivirus (also referred to as feline immunodeficiency) was first reported in Pedersen et al. (1987) Science 235:790-793. Characteristics of FIV have been reported in Yamamoto et al. (1988) Leukemia, December 25 Supplement 2:204S-215S; Yamamoto et al. (1988) Am. J. Vet. Res. 49:1246-1258; and Ackley et al. (1990) J. Virol. 64:5652-5655. Cloning and sequence analysis of FIV have been reported in Olmsted et al. (1989) Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 86:2448-2452 and 86:4355-4360.

Feline infectious peritonitis (FIP) is a sporadic disease occurring unpredictably in 30 domestic and wild Felidae. While FIP is primarily a disease of domestic cats, it has been diagnosed in lions, mountain lions, leopards, cheetahs, and the jaguar. Smaller wild cats that have been afflicted with FIP include the lynx and caracal, sand cat, and pallas cat. In domestic

cats, the disease occurs predominantly in young animals, although cats of all ages are susceptible. A peak incidence occurs between 6 and 12 months of age. A decline in incidence is noted from 5 to 13 years of age, followed by an increased incidence in cats 14 to 15 years old.

5           Viral, bacterial, and parasitic diseases in fin-fish, shellfish or other aquatic life forms pose a serious problem for the aquaculture industry. Owing to the high density of animals in the hatchery tanks or enclosed marine farming areas, infectious diseases may eradicate a large proportion of the stock in, for example, a fin-fish, shellfish, or other aquatic life forms facility. Prevention of disease is a more desired remedy to these threats to fish than intervention once  
10          the disease is in progress. Vaccination of fish is the only preventative method which may offer long-term protection through immunity. Nucleic acid based vaccinations are described in US Patent No. 5,780,448 issued to Davis.

          The fish immune system has many features similar to the mammalian immune system, such as the presence of B cells, T cells, lymphokines, complement, and immunoglobulins.

15          Fish have lymphocyte subclasses with roles that appear similar in many respects to those of the B and T cells of mammals. Vaccines can be administered by immersion or orally.

          Aquaculture species include but are not limited to fin-fish, shellfish, and other aquatic animals. Fin-fish include all vertebrate fish, which may be bony or cartilaginous fish, such as, for example, salmonids, carp, catfish, yellowtail, seabream, and seabass. Salmonids are a  
20          family of fin-fish which include trout (including rainbow trout), salmon, and Arctic char. Examples of shellfish include, but are not limited to, clams, lobster, shrimp, crab, and oysters. Other cultured aquatic animals include, but are not limited to eels, squid, and octopi.

          Polypeptides of viral aquaculture pathogens include but are not limited to glycoprotein (G) or nucleoprotein (N) of viral hemorrhagic septicemia virus (VHSV); G or N proteins of  
25          infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus (IHNV); VP1, VP2, VP3 or N structural proteins of infectious pancreatic necrosis virus (IPNV); G protein of spring viremia of carp (SVC); and a membrane-associated protein, tegumin or capsid protein or glycoprotein of channel catfish virus (CCV).

          Polypeptides of bacterial pathogens include but are not limited to an iron-regulated  
30          outer membrane protein, (IROMP), an outer membrane protein (OMP), and an A-protein of *Aeromonis salmonicida* which causes furunculosis, p57 protein of *Renibacterium salmoninarum* which causes bacterial kidney disease (BKD), major surface associated antigen



(msa), a surface expressed cytotoxin (mpr), a surface expressed hemolysin (ish), and a flagellar antigen of Yersiniosis; an extracellular protein (ECP), an iron-regulated outer membrane protein (IROMP), and a structural protein of Pasteurellosis; an OMP and a flagellar protein of Vibrosis anguillarum and *V. ordalii*; a flagellar protein, an OMP protein, *aroA*, and *purA* of Edwardsiellosis ictaluri and *E. tarda*; and surface antigen of Ichthyophthirius; and a structural and regulatory protein of *Cytophaga columnari*; and a structural and regulatory protein of Rickettsia.

Polypeptides of a parasitic pathogen include but are not limited to the surface antigens of Ichthyophthirius.

An "allergen" refers to a substance (antigen) that can induce an allergic or asthmatic response in a susceptible subject. The list of allergens is enormous and can include pollens, insect venoms, animal dander dust, fungal spores and drugs (e.g. penicillin). Examples of natural, animal and plant allergens include but are not limited to proteins specific to the following genres: *Canine* (*Canis familiaris*); *Dermatophagoides* (e.g. *Dermatophagoides farinae*); *Felis* (*Felis domesticus*); *Ambrosia* (*Ambrosia artemisiifolia*); *Lolium* (e.g. *Lolium perenne* or *Lolium multiflorum*); *Cryptomeria* (*Cryptomeria japonica*); *Alternaria* (*Alternaria alternata*); *Alder*; *Alnus* (*Alnus gultinoasa*); *Betula* (*Betula verrucosa*); *Quercus* (*Quercus alba*); *Olea* (*Olea europa*); *Artemisia* (*Artemisia vulgaris*); *Plantago* (e.g. *Plantago lanceolata*); *Parietaria* (e.g. *Parietaria officinalis* or *Parietaria judaica*); *Blattella* (e.g. *Blattella germanica*); *Apis* (e.g. *Apis multiflorum*); *Cupressus* (e.g. *Cupressus sempervirens*, *Cupressus arizonica* and *Cupressus macrocarpa*); *Juniperus* (e.g. *Juniperus sabinoides*, *Juniperus virginiana*, *Juniperus communis* and *Juniperus ashei*); *Thuya* (e.g. *Thuya orientalis*); *Chamaecyparis* (e.g. *Chamaecyparis obtusa*); *Periplaneta* (e.g. *Periplaneta americana*); *Agropyron* (e.g. *Agropyron repens*); *Secale* (e.g. *Secale cereale*); *Triticum* (e.g. *Triticum aestivum*); *Dactylis* (e.g. *Dactylis glomerata*); *Festuca* (e.g. *Festuca elatior*); *Poa* (e.g. *Poa pratensis* or *Poa compressa*); *Avena* (e.g. *Avena sativa*); *Holcus* (e.g. *Holcus lanatus*); *Anthoxanthum* (e.g. *Anthoxanthum odoratum*); *Arrhenatherum* (e.g. *Arrhenatherum elatius*); *Agrostis* (e.g. *Agrostis alba*); *Phleum* (e.g. *Phleum pratense*); *Phalaris* (e.g. *Phalaris arundinacea*); *Paspalum* (e.g. *Paspalum notatum*); *Sorghum* (e.g. *Sorghum halepensis*); and *Bromus* (e.g. *Bromus inermis*).

The antigen may be an antigen that is encoded by a nucleic acid vector or it may be not encoded in a nucleic acid vector. In the former case the nucleic acid vector is administered to

the subject and the antigen is expressed *in vivo*. In the latter case the antigen is administered directly to the subject. An "antigen not encoded in a nucleic acid vector" as used herein refers to any type of antigen that is not a nucleic acid. For instance, in some aspects of the invention the antigen not encoded in a nucleic acid vector is a polypeptide. Minor modifications of the primary amino acid sequences of polypeptide antigens may also result in a polypeptide which has substantially equivalent antigenic activity as compared to the unmodified counterpart polypeptide. Such modifications may be deliberate, as by site-directed mutagenesis, or may be spontaneous. All of the polypeptides produced by these modifications are included herein as long as antigenicity still exists. The polypeptide may be, for example, a viral polypeptide. One non-limiting example of an antigen useful according to the invention is the hepatitis B surface antigen. Experiments using this antigen are described in the Examples below.

The term "substantially purified" as used herein refers to a polypeptide which is substantially free of other proteins, lipids, carbohydrates or other materials with which it is naturally associated. One skilled in the art can purify viral or bacterial polypeptides using standard techniques for protein purification. The substantially pure polypeptide will often yield a single major band on a non-reducing polyacrylamide gel. In the case of partially glycosylated polypeptides or those that have several start codons, there may be several bands on a non-reducing polyacrylamide gel, but these will form a distinctive pattern for that polypeptide. The purity of the viral or bacterial polypeptide can also be determined by amino-terminal amino acid sequence analysis.

The invention also utilizes polynucleotides encoding the antigenic polypeptides. It is envisioned that the antigen may be delivered to the subject in a nucleic acid molecule which encodes for the antigen such that the antigen must be expressed *in vivo*. Such antigens delivered to the subject in a nucleic acid vector are referred to as "antigens encoded by a nucleic acid vector." The nucleic acid encoding the antigen is operatively linked to a gene expression sequence which directs the expression of the antigen nucleic acid within a eukaryotic cell. The "gene expression sequence" is any regulatory nucleotide sequence, such as a promoter sequence or promoter-enhancer combination, which facilitates the efficient transcription and translation of the antigen nucleic acid to which it is operatively linked. The gene expression sequence may, for example, be a mammalian or viral promoter, such as a constitutive or inducible promoter. Constitutive mammalian promoters include, but are not limited to, the promoters for the following genes: hypoxanthine phosphoribosyl transferase

(HPTR), adenosine deaminase, pyruvate kinase,  $\beta$ -actin promoter and other constitutive promoters. Exemplary viral promoters which function constitutively in eukaryotic cells include, for example, promoters from the cytomegalovirus (CMV), simian virus (e.g., SV40), papilloma virus, adenovirus, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), Rous sarcoma virus, cytomegalovirus, the long terminal repeats (LTR) of Moloney leukemia virus and other retroviruses, and the thymidine kinase promoter of herpes simplex virus. Other constitutive promoters are known to those of ordinary skill in the art. The promoters useful as gene expression sequences of the invention also include inducible promoters. Inducible promoters are expressed in the presence of an inducing agent. For example, the metallothionein promoter is induced to promote transcription and translation in the presence of certain metal ions. Other inducible promoters are known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

In general, the gene expression sequence shall include, as necessary, 5' non-transcribing and 5' non-translating sequences involved with the initiation of transcription and translation, respectively, such as a TATA box, capping sequence, CAAT sequence, and the like. Especially, such 5' non-transcribing sequences will include a promoter region which includes a promoter sequence for transcriptional control of the operably joined antigen nucleic acid. The gene expression sequences optionally include enhancer sequences or upstream activator sequences as desired.

The antigen nucleic acid is operatively linked to the gene expression sequence. As used herein, the antigen nucleic acid sequence and the gene expression sequence are said to be "operably linked" when they are covalently linked in such a way as to place the expression or transcription and/or translation of the antigen coding sequence under the influence or control of the gene expression sequence. Two DNA sequences are said to be operably linked if induction of a promoter in the 5' gene expression sequence results in the transcription of the antigen sequence and if the nature of the linkage between the two DNA sequences does not (1) result in the introduction of a frame-shift mutation, (2) interfere with the ability of the promoter region to direct the transcription of the antigen sequence, or (3) interfere with the ability of the corresponding RNA transcript to be translated into a protein. Thus, a gene expression sequence would be operably linked to an antigen nucleic acid sequence if the gene expression sequence were capable of effecting transcription of that antigen nucleic acid sequence such that the resulting transcript is translated into the desired protein or polypeptide.

The antigen nucleic acid of the invention may be delivered to the immune system

alone or in association with a vector. In its broadest sense, a "vector" is any vehicle capable of facilitating the transfer of the antigen nucleic acid to the cells of the immune system so that the antigen can be expressed and presented on the surface of the immune cell. The vector generally transports the nucleic acid to the immune cells with reduced degradation relative to the extent of degradation that would result in the absence of the vector. The vector optionally includes the above-described gene expression sequence to enhance expression of the antigen nucleic acid in immune cells. In general, the vectors useful in the invention include, but are not limited to, plasmids, phagemids, viruses, other vehicles derived from viral or bacterial sources that have been manipulated by the insertion or incorporation of the antigen nucleic acid sequences. Viral vectors are a preferred type of vector and include, but are not limited to nucleic acid sequences from the following viruses: retrovirus, such as Moloney murine leukemia virus, Harvey murine sarcoma virus, murine mammary tumor virus, and Rous sarcoma virus; adenovirus, adeno-associated virus; SV40-type viruses; polyoma viruses; Epstein-Barr viruses; papilloma viruses; herpes virus; vaccinia virus; polio virus; and RNA virus such as a retrovirus. One can readily employ other vectors not named but known to the art.

Preferred viral vectors are based on non-cytopathic eukaryotic viruses in which non-essential genes have been replaced with the gene of interest. Non-cytopathic viruses include retroviruses, the life cycle of which involves reverse transcription of genomic viral RNA into DNA with subsequent proviral integration into host cellular DNA. Retroviruses have been approved for human gene therapy trials. Most useful are those retroviruses that are replication-deficient (i.e., capable of directing synthesis of the desired proteins, but incapable of manufacturing an infectious particle). Such genetically altered retroviral expression vectors have general utility for the high-efficiency transduction of genes *in vivo*. Standard protocols for producing replication-deficient retroviruses (including the steps of incorporation of exogenous genetic material into a plasmid, transfection of a packaging cell lined with plasmid, production of recombinant retroviruses by the packaging cell line, collection of viral particles from tissue culture media, and infection of the target cells with viral particles) are provided in Kriegler, M., "Gene Transfer and Expression. A Laboratory Manual," W.H. Freeman C.O., New York (1990) and Murry, E.J. Ed. "Methods in Molecular Biology," vol. 7, Humana Press, Inc., Clifton, New Jersey (1991).

A preferred virus for certain applications is the adeno-associated virus, a

double-stranded DNA virus. The adeno-associated virus can be engineered to be replication-deficient and is capable of infecting a wide range of cell types and species. It further has advantages such as, heat and lipid solvent stability; high transduction frequencies in cells of diverse lineages, including hemopoietic cells; and lack of superinfection inhibition thus allowing multiple series of transductions. Reportedly, the adeno-associated virus can integrate into human cellular DNA in a site-specific manner, thereby minimizing the possibility of insertional mutagenesis and variability of inserted gene expression characteristic of retroviral infection. In addition, wild-type adeno-associated virus infections have been followed in tissue culture for greater than 100 passages in the absence of selective pressure, implying that the adeno-associated virus genomic integration is a relatively stable event. The adeno-associated virus can also function in an extrachromosomal fashion.

Other vectors include plasmid vectors. Plasmid vectors have been extensively described in the art and are well-known to those of skill in the art. See e.g., Sambrook et al., "Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual," Second Edition, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1989. In the last few years, plasmid vectors have been found to be particularly advantageous for delivering genes to cells *in vivo* because of their inability to replicate within and integrate into a host genome. These plasmids, however, having a promoter compatible with the host cell, can express a peptide from a gene operatively encoded within the plasmid. Some commonly used plasmids include pBR322, pUC18, pUC19, pRC/CMV, SV40, and pBlueScript. Other plasmids are well-known to those of ordinary skill in the art. Additionally, plasmids may be custom designed using restriction enzymes and ligation reactions to remove and add specific fragments of DNA.

It has recently been discovered that gene carrying plasmids can be delivered to the immune system using bacteria. Modified forms of bacteria such as *Salmonella* can be transfected with the plasmid and used as delivery vehicles. The bacterial delivery vehicles can be administered to a host subject orally or by other administration means. The bacteria deliver the plasmid to immune cells, e.g. dendritic cells, probably by passing through the gut barrier. High levels of immune protection have been established using this methodology. Such methods of delivery are useful for the aspects of the invention utilizing systemic delivery of antigen, CpG oligonucleotide and/or hormone.

CpG oligonucleotide can act in a synergistic manner with other mucosal adjuvants to enhance immune responses. The CpG oligonucleotide and mucosal adjuvant may be

administered simultaneously or sequentially. When the adjuvants are administered simultaneously they can be administered in the same or separate formulations, but are administered at the same time. The adjuvants are administered sequentially, when the administration of the at least two adjuvants is temporally separated. The separation in time  
5 between the administration of the two adjuvants may be a matter of minutes or it may be longer.

As shown in the Examples section, titers of serum anti-HBs IgG, which is associated with systemic immunity, in mice immunized with CpG oligonucleotide plus CT were at least 50-fold higher than with CT or CpG oligonucleotide alone (Figure 1). Furthermore, titers  
10 with 1  $\mu$ g of the two adjuvants together gave better results than 10  $\mu$ g of either adjuvant alone. These results indicate a synergistic action of the two adjuvants. Similar results were also obtained with CpG and LT. Such synergy was seen for both humoral (Figures 1–3) and cell-mediated (CTL and T-cell proliferation) (Figure 4) responses. As well, the proportion of IgG2a isotype of antibodies, was about 10-times greater with CpG ODN than CT, indicating a  
15 greater Th1 influence of CpG ODN compared to CT. Furthermore, the combination of CpG ODN and CT gave a 50-times higher IgG2a:IgG1 ratio than CT alone. Taken together, these results indicate a strong synergy of the adjuvant combination humoral immune responses, with respect to both strength and Th1-bias, and cellular immune responses (Figure 3).

The hallmark of mucosal immunity is the presence of secretory IgA antibodies in  
20 association with mucosal surfaces. IgA antibodies are essential to prevent entry of the pathogen into the body. IN immunization of mice with HBsAg alone, 1 or 10  $\mu$ g, failed to induce any detectable IgA in lung washes. Nor was there any IgA with the low dose of antigen and a low dose (1  $\mu$ g) of CT or CpG ODN. However there was significant IgA with a high dose of antigen and low dose of either CT or CpG ODN or a low dose of antigen and a low  
25 dose of combined adjuvants. In fact, IgA levels with 1  $\mu$ g of each of CpG ODN and CT combined were higher than with 10  $\mu$ g of either alone, when administered with 10  $\mu$ g HBsAg (Figure 5). Furthermore, IgA in fecal extracts, which indicates induction of mucosal immunity at distant sites, was detected only with the combined adjuvants (Figure 6). These results indicate that CpG ODN is a potent adjuvant for induction of mucosal immunity and that there  
30 is a strong synergistic response when used with another mucosal adjuvant such as CT.

Similar results were found when LT was used in place of CT (Figure 7, Tables 2 and 3). CT and LT, which are closely related with considerable structural and functional homology, are both too toxic for use in humans. However there are a number of derivations of CT and LT that retain some adjuvant activity yet are much less toxic. One example is the B-subunit of CT (CTB) which is non-toxic since the toxicity is associated with the A subunit. Another example is LTK63, a genetically detoxified mutant of LT with no toxic enzymatic activity. Although these adjuvants are being used in human clinical trials, neither was as strong as CpG ODN for induction of systemic immunity (serum IgG) when each was used at 1  $\mu$ g (Figure 7). There was also a synergistic effect when CpG ODN and CTB or LTK63 were used together, however this was more noticeable for Th1-bias than for strength of the antibody response (Figure 7 and Table 2). The combination of CpG ODN and LTK63 also induced IgA in lung washes, even though neither adjuvant on its own induced IgA at low concentrations (Table 3).

The strong adjuvanticity and low toxicity of CpG oligonucleotide when delivered to a mucosal surface has important implications. It will allow many antigens to be delivered to mucosal surfaces for the induction of strong systemic immune responses. Non-invasive vaccine delivery is desirable for immunization of children, animals, mass vaccination programs and also to avoid the risk of needle-stick injury. Such vaccines could be delivered intranasally by nose-drops or nasal spray or with a delivery system, or they could be delivered by other routes (oral, rectal, ocular) to other mucosal surfaces, including with different delivery systems.

The synergistic interaction of CpG oligonucleotide with mucosal adjuvants has important implications in vaccine development. Because of the synergistic response it is now possible to use lower and less toxic doses of mucosal adjuvants such as CT, or other related toxins or subunits thereof, in conjunction with CpG oligonucleotide to obtain even better immune responses with less toxicity. For example, it would be possible to use CpG oligonucleotide in combination with a less toxic genetically modified mutants of CT or LT, for a highly effective vaccine of acceptable toxicity. Not only could the combined adjuvant approach be used to advantage with different toxins, but also with different forms of antigen, and different delivery systems to various mucosal routes. An effective amount as used with respect to this aspect of the invention is an amount that produces a synergistic immune response. A

synergistic amount is that amount which produces an immune response against a specific antigen that is greater than the sum of the individual effects of either the CpG or the mucosal adjuvant alone.

The invention can also be used in combination with parenteral immunization strategies (e.g., intramuscular, intradermal or subcutaneous injection), which are normally used for the induction of systemic immune responses. Remarkably, mice immunized with HBsAg and having CpG oligonucleotide as at least one adjuvant, when primed by a parenteral route (IM) and boosted by a mucosal route (IN) or primed IN and boosted IM had up to 10-fold higher IgG (i.e., systemic humoral response) than when both prime and boost were by the IM route (Figure 8). Cellular immune responses were also stronger with the parenteral/mucosal combined approaches than with only IN or only IM, as indicated by stronger CTL (Figure 9) and higher T-cell proliferation (Figure 10). While the IN prime and boost gives good mucosal responses the IM prime and boost gives no detectable mucosal responses (Figures 11-13). The IM prime and IN boost approach also gave significant IgA in lung washes (Figure 11) and saliva (Figure 12) but not feces (Figure 13).

The mucosal adjuvants useful according to the invention are non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvants. A "non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant" as used herein is an adjuvant other than a CpG oligonucleotide that is capable of inducing a mucosal immune response in a subject when administered to a mucosal surface in conjunction with an antigen. Mucosal adjuvants include but are not limited to Bacterial toxins: e.g., Cholera toxin (CT), CT derivatives including but not limited to CT B subunit (CTB) (Wu et al., 1998, Tochikubo et al., 1998); CTD53 (Val to Asp) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTK97 (Val to Lys) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTK104 (Tyr to Lys) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTD53/K63 (Val to Asp, Ser to Lys) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTH54 (Arg to His) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTN107 (His to Asn) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTE114 (Ser to Glu) (Fontana et al., 1995); CTE112K (Glu to Lys) (Yamamoto et al., 1997a); CTS61F (Ser to Phe) (Yamamoto et al., 1997a, 1997b); CTS106 (Pro to Lys) (Douce et al., 1997, Fontana et al., 1995); and CTK63 (Ser to Lys) (Douce et al., 1997, Fontana et al., 1995), Zonula occludens toxin, zot, Escherichia coli heat-labile enterotoxin, Labile Toxin (LT), LT derivatives including but not limited to LT B subunit (LTB) (Verweij et al., 1998); LT7K (Arg to Lys) (Komase et al., 1998, Douce et al., 1995); LT61F (Ser to Phe) (Komase et al., 1998); LT112K (Glu to Lys) (Komase et al., 1998); LT118E (Gly to Glu) (Komase et al., 1998); LT146E (Arg to Glu) (Komase et al., 1998);



LT192G (Arg to Gly) (Komase et al., 1998); LTK63 (Ser to Lys) (Marchetti et al., 1998, Douce et al., 1997, 1998, Di Tommaso et al., 1996); and LTR72 (Ala to Arg) (Giuliani et al., 1998), Pertussis toxin, PT. (Lycke et al., 1992, Spangler BD, 1992, Freytag and Clemments, 1999, Roberts et al., 1995, Wilson et al., 1995) including PT-9K/129G (Roberts et al., 1995, Cropley et al., 1995); Toxin derivatives (see below) (Holmgren et al., 1993, Verweij et al., 1998, Rappuoli et al., 1995, Freytag and Clements, 1999); Lipid A derivatives (e.g., monophosphoryl lipid A, MPL) (Sasaki et al., 1998, Vancott et al., 1998; Muramyl Dipeptide (MDP) derivatives (Fukushima et al., 1996, Ogawa et al., 1989, Michalek et al., 1983, Morisaki et al., 1983); Bacterial outer membrane proteins (e.g., outer surface protein A (OspA) lipoprotein of *Borrelia burgdorferi*, outer membrane protine of *Neisseria meningitidis*)(Marinaro et al., 1999, Van de Verg et al., 1996); Oil-in-water emulsions (e.g., MF59) (Barchfield et al., 1999, Verschoor et al., 1999, O'Hagan, 1998); Aluminum salts (Isaka et al., 1998, 1999); and Saponins (e.g., QS21) Aquila Biopharmaceuticals, Inc., Worster, MA) (Sasaki et al., 1998, MacNeal et al., 1998). ISCOMS, MF-59 (a squalene-in-water emulsion stabilized with Span 85 and Tween 80; Chiron Corporation, Emeryville, CA); the Seppic ISA series of Montanide adjuvants (e.g., Montanide ISA 720; AirLiquide, Paris, France); PROVAX (an oil-in-water emulsion containing a stabilizing detergent and a micell-forming agent; IDEC Pharmaceuticals Corporation, San Diego, CA); Syntex Adjuvant Formulation (SAF; Syntex Chemicals, Inc., Boulder, CO); poly[di(carboxylatophenoxy)phosphazene (PCPP polymer; Virus Research Institute, USA) and Leishmania elongation factor (Corixa Corporation, Seattle, WA).

Although mucosal delivery of the antigen is considered a prerequisite for induction of strong mucosal immune responses, it is possible to induce strong mucosal immunity to systemically delivered antigens by modulating the immune response with steroid hormones, such as described for 1,25-Dihydroxy vitamin D<sub>3</sub> [1,25(OH)<sub>2</sub>D<sub>3</sub>] (Daynes *et al.*, 1996). The invention also includes methods for the administration of CpG oligonucleotide alone or in combination with other mucosal adjuvants and antigen to hormonally treated individuals. Each of the compounds may be administered together or separately, systemically or mucosally. In some embodiments the CpG oligonucleotide and antigen and optionally other mucosal adjuvants are administered mucosally and the hormone is administered systemically. The hormone may be given parenterally (e.g., subcutaneous injection) or mucosally (e.g., orally).

Mucosal immune responses can also be induced with the co-administration of cytokines with the CpG oligonucleotides. Immune responses can also be augmented by co-linear expression of cytokines (Bueler & Mulligan, 1996; Chow *et al.*, 1997; Geissler *et al.*, 1997; Iwasaki *et al.*, 1997; Kim *et al.*, 1997) or B-7 co-stimulatory molecules (Iwasaki *et al.*, 1997; Tsuji *et al.*, 1997). The cytokines can be administered directly with CpG oligonucleotides or may be administered in the form of a nucleic acid vector that encodes the cytokine, such that the cytokine can be expressed *in vivo*. In one embodiment, when the CpG is administered in the form of a plasmid expression vector, the vector may encode the cytokine, and a separate administration of cytokine is not required. The term "cytokine" is used as a generic name for a diverse group of soluble proteins and peptides which act as humoral regulators at nano- to picomolar concentrations and which, either under normal or pathological conditions, modulate the functional activities of individual cells and tissues. These proteins also mediate interactions between cells directly and regulate processes taking place in the extracellular environment. Examples of cytokines include, but are not limited to IL-1, IL-2, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-10, IL-12, IL-15, granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), granulocyte colony stimulating factor (GCSF), interferon- $\gamma$  ( $\gamma$ -INF), tumor necrosis factor (TNF), TGF- $\beta$ , FLT-3 ligand, and CD40 ligand.

Cytokines play a role in directing the T cell response. Helper (CD4+) T cells orchestrate the immune response of mammals through production of soluble factors that act on other immune system cells, including other T cells. Most mature CD4+ T helper cells express one of two cytokine profiles: Th1 or Th2. Th1 cells express IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-9, IL-10, IL-13, GM-CSF and low levels of TNF- $\alpha$ . The TH1 subset promotes delayed-type hypersensitivity, cell-mediated immunity, and immunoglobulin class switching to IgG<sub>2a</sub>. The Th2 subset induces humoral immunity by activating B cells, promoting antibody production, and inducing class switching to IgG<sub>1</sub> and IgE. In some embodiments it is preferred that the cytokine be a Th1 cytokine.

CpG oligonucleotides were found, surprisingly, to induce mucosal immunity in remote sites as well as local sites. A "remote site" as used herein is a mucosal tissue that is located in a different region of the body than the mucosal tissue to which the CpG oligonucleotide has been administered. For instance if the CpG oligonucleotide is administered intranasally, a remote site would be the mucosal lining of the gut.

For use in the instant invention, the nucleic acids can be synthesized *de novo* using any of a number of procedures well known in the art. For example, the b-cyanoethyl phosphoramidite method (Beaucage, S.L., and Caruthers, M.H., *Tet. Let.* 22:1859, 1981); nucleoside H-phosphonate method (Garegg *et al.*, *Tet. Let.* 27:4051-4054, 1986; Froehler *et al.*, *Nucl. Acid. Res.* 14:5399-5407, 1986, ; Garegg *et al.*, *Tet. Let.* 27:4055-4058, 1986, Gaffney *et al.*, *Tet. Let.* 29:2619-2622, 1988). These chemistries can be performed by a variety of automated oligonucleotide synthesizers available in the market. Alternatively, CpG dinucleotides can be produced on a large scale in plasmids, (see Sambrook, T., *et al.*, Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor laboratory Press, New York, 1989) and separated into smaller pieces or administered whole. After being administered to a subject the plasmid can be degraded into oligonucleotides. Oligonucleotides can be prepared from existing nucleic acid sequences (*e.g.*, genomic or cDNA) using known techniques, such as those employing restriction enzymes, exonucleases or endonucleases.

For use *in vivo*, nucleic acids are preferably relatively resistant to degradation (*e.g.*, via endo-and exo-nucleases). Secondary structures, such as stem loops, can stabilize nucleic acids against degradation. Alternatively, nucleic acid stabilization can be accomplished via phosphate backbone modifications. One type of stabilized nucleic acid has at least a partial phosphorothioate modified backbone. Phosphorothioates may be synthesized using automated techniques employing either phosphoramidate or H-phosphonate chemistries. Aryl-and alkyl-phosphonates can be made, *e.g.*, as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,469,863; and alkylphosphotriesters (in which the charged oxygen moiety is alkylated as described in U.S. Patent No. 5,023,243 and European Patent No. 092,574) can be prepared by automated solid phase synthesis using commercially available reagents. Methods for making other DNA backbone modifications and substitutions have been described (Uhlmann, E. and Peyman, A., *Chem. Rev.* 90:544, 1990; Goodchild, J., *Bioconjugate Chem.* 1:165, 1990).

Nucleic acids containing an appropriate unmethylated CpG can be effective in any vertebrate. Different nucleic acids containing an unmethylated CpG can cause optimal immune stimulation depending on the mammalian species. Thus an oligonucleotide causing optimal stimulation in humans may not cause optimal stimulation in a mouse and vice versa. One of skill in the art can identify the optimal oligonucleotides useful for a particular mammalian species of interest using routine assays described herein and/or known in the art, using the guidance supplied

herein.

The term "effective amount" of a CpG oligonucleotide refers to the amount necessary or sufficient to realize a desired biologic effect. For example, an effective amount of an oligonucleotide containing at least one unmethylated CpG for inducing mucosal immunity is that amount necessary to cause the development of IgA in response to an antigen upon exposure to the antigen. Combined with the teachings provided herein, by choosing among the various active compounds and weighing factors such as potency, relative bioavailability, patient body weight, severity of adverse side-effects and preferred mode of administration, an effective prophylactic or therapeutic treatment regimen can be planned which does not cause substantial toxicity and yet is entirely effective to treat the particular subject. The effective amount for any particular application can vary depending on such factors as the disease or condition being treated, the particular CpG oligonucleotide being administered (e.g. the number of unmethylated CpG motifs or their location in the nucleic acid), the antigen, the size of the subject, or the severity of the disease or condition. One of ordinary skill in the art can empirically determine the effective amount of a particular CpG oligonucleotide and antigen without necessitating undue experimentation.

Subject doses of the compounds described herein typically range from about 80 mg/day to 16,000 mg/day, more typically from about 800 mg/day to 8000 mg/day, and most typically from about 800 mg/day to 4000 mg/day. Stated in terms of subject body weight, typical dosages range from about 1 to 200 mg/kg/day, more typically from about 10 to 100 mg/kg/day, and most typically from about 10 to 50 mg/kg/day. Stated in terms of subject body surface areas, typical dosages range from about 40 to 8000 mg/m<sup>2</sup>/day, more typically from about 400 to 4000 mg/m<sup>2</sup>/day, and most typically from about 400 to 2000 mg/m<sup>2</sup>/day.

In some embodiments, particularly when the CpG is in a plasmid vector, at least 50 µg of the CpG is administered to a subject. In other embodiments at least 75 µg, 100 µg, 200 µg, 300 µg, 400 µg, 500 µg and every integer in between of the CpG is administered to the subject.

For any compound described herein the therapeutically effective amount can be initially determined from cell culture assays. For instance the effective amount of CpG oligonucleotide useful for inducing mucosal immunity can be assessed using the in vitro assays described above

with respect to stimulation index. The stimulation index can be used to determine as effective amount of the particular oligonucleotide for the particular subject, and the dosage can be adjusted upwards or downwards to achieve the desired levels in the subject. Therapeutically effective amounts can also be determined from animal models. A therapeutically effective dose can also  
5 be determined from human data for CpG oligonucleotides which have been tested in humans (human clinical trials have been initiated) and for compounds which are known to exhibit similar pharmacological activities, such as other mucosal adjuvants, e.g., LT and other antigens for vaccination purposes. The applied dose can be adjusted based on the relative bioavailability and potency of the administered compound. Adjusting the dose to achieve maximal efficacy based  
10 on the methods described above and other methods as are well-known in the art is well within the capabilities of the ordinarily skilled artisan.

The formulations of the invention are administered in pharmaceutically acceptable solutions, which may routinely contain pharmaceutically acceptable concentrations of salt, buffering agents, preservatives, compatible carriers, adjuvants, and optionally other therapeutic  
15 ingredients.

For use in therapy, an effective amount of the CpG oligonucleotide can be administered to a subject by any mode that delivers the oligonucleotide to a mucosal surface. "Administering" the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention may be accomplished by any means known to the skilled artisan. Preferred routes of administration include but are not limited to oral,  
20 intranasal, intratracheal, inhalation, ocular, vaginal, and rectal.

For oral administration, the compounds (i.e., CpG oligonucleotides, antigen, mucosal adjuvant) can be formulated readily by combining the active compound(s) with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers well known in the art. Such carriers enable the compounds of the invention to be formulated as tablets, pills, dragees, capsules, liquids, gels, syrups, slurries, suspensions and  
25 the like, for oral ingestion by a subject to be treated. Pharmaceutical preparations for oral use can be obtained as solid excipient, optionally grinding a resulting mixture, and processing the mixture of granules, after adding suitable auxiliaries, if desired, to obtain tablets or dragee cores. Suitable excipients are, in particular, fillers such as sugars, including lactose, sucrose, mannitol, or sorbitol; cellulose preparations such as, for example, maize starch, wheat starch, rice starch,  
30 potato starch, gelatin, gum tragacanth, methyl cellulose, hydroxypropylmethyl-cellulose, sodium

carboxymethylcellulose, and/or polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP). If desired, disintegrating agents may be added, such as the cross-linked polyvinyl pyrrolidone, agar, or alginic acid or a salt thereof such as sodium alginate. Optionally the oral formulations may also be formulated in saline or buffers for neutralizing internal acid conditions.

5 Dragee cores are provided with suitable coatings. For this purpose, concentrated sugar solutions may be used, which may optionally contain gum arabic, talc, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, carbopol gel, polyethylene glycol, and/or titanium dioxide, lacquer solutions, and suitable organic solvents or solvent mixtures. Dyestuffs or pigments may be added to the tablets or dragee coatings for identification or to characterize different combinations of active compound doses.

10 Pharmaceutical preparations which can be used orally include push-fit capsules made of gelatin, as well as soft, sealed capsules made of gelatin and a plasticizer, such as glycerol or sorbitol. The push-fit capsules can contain the active ingredients in admixture with filler such as lactose, binders such as starches, and/or lubricants such as talc or magnesium stearate and, optionally, stabilizers. In soft capsules, the active compounds may be dissolved or suspended in  
15 suitable liquids, such as fatty oils, liquid paraffin, or liquid polyethylene glycols. In addition, stabilizers may be added. Microspheres formulated for oral administration may also be used. Such microspheres have been well defined in the art. All formulations for oral administration should be in dosages suitable for such administration.

For buccal administration, the compositions may take the form of tablets or lozenges  
20 formulated in conventional manner.

For administration by inhalation, the compounds for use according to the present invention may be conveniently delivered in the form of an aerosol spray presentation from pressurized packs or a nebulizer, with the use of a suitable propellant, *e.g.*, dichlorodifluoromethane, trichlorofluoromethane, dichlorotetrafluoroethane, carbon dioxide or  
25 other suitable gas. In the case of a pressurized aerosol the dosage unit may be determined by providing a valve to deliver a metered amount. Capsules and cartridges of *e.g.* gelatin for use in an inhaler or insufflator may be formulated containing a powder mix of the compound and a suitable powder base such as lactose or starch.

The compounds, when it is desirable to deliver them systemically, may be formulated for

parenteral administration by injection. *e.g.*, by bolus injection or continuous infusion. Formulations for injection may be presented in unit dosage form. *e.g.*, in ampoules or in multi-dose containers, with an added preservative. The compositions may take such forms as suspensions, solutions or emulsions in oily or aqueous vehicles, and may contain formulatory agents such as suspending, stabilizing and/or dispersing agents.

Pharmaceutical formulations for parenteral administration include aqueous solutions of the active compounds in water-soluble form. Additionally, suspensions of the active compounds may be prepared as appropriate oily injection suspensions. Suitable lipophilic solvents or vehicles include fatty oils such as sesame oil, or synthetic fatty acid esters, such as ethyl oleate or triglycerides, or liposomes. Aqueous injection suspensions may contain substances which increase the viscosity of the suspension, such as sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, sorbitol, or dextran. Optionally, the suspension may also contain suitable stabilizers or agents which increase the solubility of the compounds to allow for the preparation of highly concentrated solutions.

Alternatively, the active compounds may be in powder form for constitution with a suitable vehicle, *e.g.*, sterile pyrogen-free water, before use.

The compounds may also be formulated in rectal or vaginal compositions such as suppositories or retention enemas, *e.g.*, containing conventional suppository bases such as cocoa butter or other glycerides.

In addition to the formulations described previously, the compounds may also be formulated as a depot preparation. Such long acting formulations may be formulated with suitable polymeric or hydrophobic materials (for example as an emulsion in an acceptable oil) or ion exchange resins, or as sparingly soluble derivatives, for example, as a sparingly soluble salt.

The pharmaceutical compositions also may comprise suitable solid or gel phase carriers or excipients. Examples of such carriers or excipients include but are not limited to calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate, various sugars, starches, cellulose derivatives, gelatin, and polymers such as polyethylene glycols.

Suitable liquid or solid pharmaceutical preparation forms are, for example, aqueous or saline solutions for inhalation, microencapsulated, encochleated, coated onto microscopic gold

particles, contained in liposomes, nebulized, aerosols, pellets for implantation into the skin, or dried onto a sharp object to be scratched into the skin. The pharmaceutical compositions also include granules, powders, tablets, coated tablets, (micro)capsules, suppositories, syrups, emulsions, suspensions, creams, drops or preparations with protracted release of active compounds, in whose preparation excipients and additives and/or auxiliaries such as disintegrants, binders, coating agents, swelling agents, lubricants, flavorings, sweeteners or solubilizers are customarily used as described above. The pharmaceutical compositions are suitable for use in a variety of drug delivery systems. For a brief review of present methods for drug delivery, see Langer, *Science* 249:1527-1533, 1990, which is incorporated herein by reference.

The CpG oligonucleotides and antigens may be administered per se (neat) or in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt. When used in medicine the salts should be pharmaceutically acceptable, but non-pharmaceutically acceptable salts may conveniently be used to prepare pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof. Such salts include, but are not limited to, those prepared from the following acids: hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulphuric, nitric, phosphoric, maleic, acetic, salicylic, p-toluene sulphonic, tartaric, citric, methane sulphonic, formic, malonic, succinic, naphthalene-2-sulphonic, and benzene sulphonic. Also, such salts can be prepared as alkaline metal or alkaline earth salts, such as sodium, potassium or calcium salts of the carboxylic acid group.

Suitable buffering agents include: acetic acid and a salt (1-2% w/v); citric acid and a salt (1-3% w/v); boric acid and a salt (0.5-2.5% w/v); and phosphoric acid and a salt (0.8-2% w/v). Suitable preservatives include benzalkonium chloride (0.003-0.03% w/v); chlorobutanol (0.3-0.9% w/v); parabens (0.01-0.25% w/v) and thimerosal (0.004-0.02% w/v).

The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention contain an effective amount of a CpG oligonucleotide and antigens optionally included in a pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier. The term "pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier" means one or more compatible solid or liquid filler, dilutants or encapsulating substances which are suitable for administration to a human or other vertebrate animal. The term "carrier" denotes an organic or inorganic ingredient, natural or synthetic, with which the active ingredient is combined to facilitate the application. The components of the pharmaceutical compositions also are capable of being commingled with the



compounds of the present invention, and with each other, in a manner such that there is no interaction which would substantially impair the desired pharmaceutical efficiency.

The CpG oligonucleotides or antigens useful in the invention may be delivered in mixtures with additional mucosal adjuvant(s) or antigen(s). A mixture may consist of several  
5 mucosal adjuvants in addition to the CpG oligonucleotide or several antigens.

A variety of administration routes are available. The particular mode selected will depend, of course, upon the particular adjuvants or antigen selected, the particular condition being treated and the dosage required for therapeutic efficacy. The methods of this invention, generally speaking, may be practiced using any mode of administration that is medically acceptable,  
10 meaning any mode that produces effective levels of an immune response without causing clinically unacceptable adverse effects. Preferred modes of administration are discussed above.

The compositions may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form and may be prepared by any of the methods well known in the art of pharmacy. All methods include the step of bringing the compounds into association with a carrier which constitutes one or more accessory  
15 ingredients. In general, the compositions are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing the compounds into association with a liquid carrier, a finely divided solid carrier, or both, and then, if necessary, shaping the product. Liquid dose units are vials or ampoules. Solid dose units are tablets, capsules and suppositories. For treatment of a patient, depending on activity of the compound, manner of administration, purpose of the immunization (i.e., prophylactic or  
20 therapeutic), nature and severity of the disorder, age and body weight of the patient, different doses may be necessary. The administration of a given dose can be carried out both by single administration in the form of an individual dose unit or else several smaller dose units. Multiple administration of doses at specific intervals of weeks or months apart is usual for boosting the antigen-specific responses.

25 Other delivery systems can include time-release, delayed release or sustained release delivery systems. Such systems can avoid repeated administrations of the compounds, increasing convenience to the subject and the physician. Many types of release delivery systems are available and known to those of ordinary skill in the art. They include polymer base systems such as poly(lactide-glycolide), copolyoxalates, polycaprolactones, polyesteramides, polyorthoesters,

polyhydroxybutyric acid, and polyanhydrides. Microcapsules of the foregoing polymers containing drugs are described in, for example, U.S. Patent 5,075,109. Delivery systems also include non-polymer systems that are: lipids including sterols such as cholesterol, cholesterol esters and fatty acids or neutral fats such as mono-di-and tri-glycerides; hydrogel release systems; 5 sylastic systems; peptide based systems; wax coatings; compressed tablets using conventional binders and excipients; partially fused implants; and the like. Specific examples include, but are not limited to: (a) erosional systems in which an agent of the invention is contained in a form within a matrix such as those described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,452,775, 4,675,189, and 5,736,152, and (b) diffusional systems in which an active component permeates at a controlled rate from a 10 polymer such as described in U.S. Patent Nos. 3,854,480, 5,133,974 and 5,407,686. In addition, pump-based hardware delivery systems can be used, some of which are adapted for implantation.

The present invention is further illustrated by the following Examples, which in no way should be construed as further limiting. The entire contents of all of the references (including literature references, issued patents, published patent applications, and co-pending patent 15 applications) cited throughout this application are hereby expressly incorporated by reference.

## **Examples**

### **Example 1: Materials and Methods**

#### **1. Materials and Animals**

*Mice.* All experiments were carried out using female BALB/c mice aged 6-8 weeks with 20 5-10 mice per experimental or control group. For intranasal immunizations, mice were lightly anaesthetized with Halothane® (Halocarbon Laboratories, River Edge, NJ).

*Adjuvants:* Mice were immunized by IN administration of 1 µg HBsAg (plasma-derived HBV S protein, ad subtype, Genzyme Diagnostics, San Carlos, CA), alone or combined with 1 or 10 µg of CT (purified from *Vibrio cholerae*, Sigma, St. Louis, MO), LT (purified from 25 *Escherichia coli*, Sigma), CTB (purified from *Vibrio cholerae*, Sigma), LTK63 (mutant of LT bearing an Ser → Lys at position 63, generously provided by Dr. Rino Rappuoli, IRIS, Chiron S.p.A., Italy) and/or CpG ODN (5'-TCCATGACCGTTCCTGACGTT-3', CpG ODN #1826 SEQ ID NO. 90) or non-CpG control ODN (5'TCCAGGACTTCTCTCAGGTT-3', CpG ODN #1982

SEQ ID NO. 91) (Hybridon Specialty Products, Milford, MA). The antigen and adjuvant(s) were made up to a total volume of 150  $\mu$ l with 0.15 M NaCl, and were administered by IN inhalation. ODN were resuspended in 10 mM Tris (pH 7.0), 1 mM EDTA for storage at +4EC before dilution into saline for immunization. LPS level in ODN was undetectable (< 1 ng/mg) by Limulus assay  
5 (Whittaker Bioproducts, Walkersville, MD).

## 2. Mucosal Immunization

Each animal was immunized with 1 or 10 Fg plasma-derived HBV S protein (HBsAg, ad subtype, Genzyme Diagnostics, San Carlos, CA), which was administered alone or in combination with 1 or 10  $\mu$ g of CT or LT or derivative of them and/or CpG oligonucleotide  
10 #1826. The derivatives of CT were the B subunit of CT (CTB). The detoxified derivatives of LT were all produced by genetic mutations that affected the A subunit or enzymatic activity and included LTK63. All vaccines were delivered in a total volume of 150  $\mu$ l, which was applied as droplets directly over both external nares of lightly anaesthetized mice. Some mice were boosted in the identical manner at 8 weeks after prime. All experimental groups contained 5 or 10 mice.

## 3. Collection of samples

Plasma: Plasma was recovered from mice at various times after immunization (1, 2, 4 and 8 wk post-prime and 1, 2 and 4 wk post-boost) by retro-orbital bleeding and stored at -20°C until assayed.

*Fecal pellets:* Fecal pellets were collected from mice at various times after immunization  
20 (1, 2, 4 and 8 wk post-prime and 1, 2 and 4 wk post-boost). Mice were isolated in individual cages without bedding for a 24 hr period, following which fecal pellets were collected and weighed into 0.1 mg aliquots. One ml TBS (0.05 M Tris-HCl, 0.15 M NaCl, pH 7.5) and 0.1 Fg sodium azide (Sigma) were added per 0.1 mg of fecal material. Samples were allowed to rehydrate for 30 min at RT, then were centrifuged at 6000 rpm for 15 min. to remove fecal debris  
25 and supernatants were collected and stored at -20°C until assayed for S-IgA by ELISA.

Lung washes: Lung washes were carried out on mice 4 wk after primary immunization or boost. A 0.33 cc Insulin syringe with a 29G1/2 needle attached (Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ) was used for carrying out lung washes. One ml TBS was drawn into the syringe and a length of polyethylene (PE) tubing that was 1 cm longer than the needle was attached (PE20,

ID = 0.38 mm, Becton Dickinson). The mouse was killed by anesthetic overdose and the trachea was immediately exposed through an anterior midline incision made using fine-tipped surgical scissors (Fine Science Tools Inc., North Vancouver, BC). A small incision was then made in the trachea and a clamp (Fine Science Tools Inc., North Vancouver, BC) was placed above it. The PE tubing was passed a few mm down the trachea through the incision and a second clamp was placed just below the incision to hold the PE tubing in place in the trachea. The TBS solution was slowly instilled in the lungs then withdrawn three times (80% recovery expected). Recovered samples were centrifuge at 13,000 rpm for 7 min., and the supernatants were collected and stored at -20E C until assayed by ELISA.

#### 4. Evaluation of immune responses

*Systemic humoral response:* HBsAg-specific antibodies (anti-HBs) in the mouse plasma were detected and quantified by end-point dilution ELISA assay (in triplicate) for individual animals as described previously (Davis *et al.*, 1998). Briefly, 96-well polystyrene plates (Corning) coated overnight (RT) with plasma derived HBsAg particles (as used for immunization) (100 FI of 1 Fg/ml in 0.05 M sodium carbonate-bicarbonate buffer, pH 9.6) were incubated with the plasma for 1 hr at 37 E C. Captured antibodies were then detected with horseradish peroxidase (HRP)-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgG, IgG1 or IgG2a (1:4000 in PBS-Tween, 10% PBS: 100 FI/well; Southern Biotechnology Inc., Birmingham, AL), followed by addition of o-phenylenediamine dihydrochloride solution (OPD, Sigma), 100 FI/well. for 30 min at RT in the dark. The reaction was stopped by the addition of 4 N H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, 50 FI/well.

End-point dilution titers were defined as the highest plasma dilution that resulted in an absorbance value (OD 450) two times greater than that of non-immune plasma, with a cut-off value of 0.05. Anti-HBs titers of responding mice (endpoint titers > 10) were expressed as means SEM of individual animal values, which were themselves the average of triplicate assays.

*Mucosal humoral response:* This was carried out on fecal supernatants or recovered lung washes as for plasma (above) except samples were incubated on coated plates for 2 hr at 37°C and captured antibodies were detected with HRP-conjugated goat anti-mouse IgA (1:1000 in PBS-Tween, 10% PBS: 100 FI/well; Southern Biotechnology Inc). Non-immune fecal pellet or lung wash solutions were used to determine negative control values. For lung wash solutions, anti-HBs endpoint dilution titers were reported (as described above), whereas for fecal pellet solutions,

absorbance values (OD 450) greater than that of non-immune fecal pellet solution were calculated and expressed as mean SEM of individual OD 450 values, which were themselves the average of triplicate assays.

*Evaluation of CTL responses:* Spleens were removed from mice 4 wk after primary immunization or boost. *In vitro* assay of HBsAg-specific cytolytic activity was carried out as previously described (Davis *et al.*, 1998). In brief, single cell suspensions were prepared and suspended in tissue culture medium (RPMI 1640, 10 % FBS, Life Technologies, Grand Island, NY, supplemented with penicillin-streptomycin solution, 1000 U/ml, 1mg/ml final concentrations respectively, Sigma). Splenocytes ( $3 \times 10^7$ ) were co-cultured for 5 days (37EC, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>) with  $1.5 \times 10^6$  syngeneic HBsAg-expressing stimulator cells (P815-preS, generously provided by F. V. Chisari, Scripps Institute, La Jolla, CA) that had been previously inactivated by irradiation (20 000 rad). Effector cells were harvested, washed, serially diluted and cultured with  $5 \times 10^4$  <sup>51</sup>Cr-labeled HBsAg-expressing target cells (P815S) in round bottom 96-well culture plates (37EC, 5% CO<sub>2</sub>, 4 hr). Supernatant (100 FI) was removed for radiation (gamma) counting. Spontaneous release was determined by incubating target cells without effector cells and total release by addition of 100 FI 2 N HCl to the target cells. The percent lysis was calculated as  $[(\text{experimental release} - \text{spontaneous release}) / (\text{total release} - \text{spontaneous release})] \times 100$ . The percent specific lysis was calculated as % lysis with P815S - % lysis with P815 cells. CTL activity for responding mice [% specific lysis > 10 at effector:target (E:T) of 25:1] were expressed as mean SEM of individual animal values, which were themselves the average of triplicate assays.

## 5. Statistical analysis

Data were analyzed using the GraphPAD InStat program (Graph PAD Software, San Diego). The statistical significance of the difference between two groups was determined from the means and standard deviations by Student's 2-tailed *t*-test and between three or more groups by 1-factor analysis of variance (ANOVA) followed by Tukey's test for multiple range testing. Differences were considered to be not significant with  $p > 0.05$ .

**Example 2. Systemic humoral responses after mucosal immunization**

BALB/c mice immunized on a single occasion by IN inhalation of HBsAg without adjuvant did not have any detectable anti-HBs IgG antibodies in their plasma with 1 µg HBsAg and only extremely low titers (<20) in a few mice with 10 µg of antigen (Figure 1).

5 In contrast, titers of anti-HBs IgG were considerably greater when HBsAg was administered in combination with either CpG oligonucleotide or CT as adjuvant (Figure 1). With a low dose of adjuvant (1 µg) and either a low or high dose of antigen (1 or 10 µg HBsAg), CpG oligonucleotide was found to be equivalent to CT for induction of plasma anti-HBs IgG ( $p = 0.73$  with 1 µg HBsAg, and  $0.13$  with 10 µg HBsAg). CpG oligonucleotide and CT were also  
10 equivalent with a high dose of adjuvant (10 µg) and high dose of antigen (10 µg HBsAg) ( $p = 0.08$ ), however with a lower dose of antigen, the higher dose of CT was superior to the CpG oligonucleotide ( $p = 0.01$ ) (Figure 1). These results indicate that CpG oligonucleotide is essentially equal to CT for enhancement of systemic immune responses with mucosal delivery (IN) of a protein antigen.

15 A combined low dose of CpG oligonucleotide and CT (1 µg of each) gave a better systemic humoral response than 10 µg CpG oligonucleotide alone ( $p = 0.01$ ) and was equal to that with 10 µg CT alone ( $p = 0.22$ ), when added to a 1 µg dose of HBsAg. Furthermore, with a 10 µg dose of HBsAg, the combined adjuvants (1 µg each) induced anti-HBs IgG titers as high as those with 10 µg of either adjuvant alone (CT,  $p = 0.27$ ; CpG oligonucleotide,  $p = 0.09$ ) (Figure  
20 1). These finding indicate that CpG oligonucleotide can act synergistically with CT when administered to mucosal tissue to induce strong systemic humoral responses, and thereby permit a lower dose of adjuvant to be administered.

Antibody titers were further increased about 10-fold by boosting at 8 wks. Post-boost titers of plasma IgG were equivalent for CT and CpG oligonucleotide used alone, and were 5-10  
25 times higher than that with both adjuvants together (Figure 2). These results indicate that the adjuvant effect of CpG oligonucleotide alone or in combination with CT can be enhanced by boosting.

Evaluation of plasma for IgG antibody isotypes after a single mucosal immunization showed predominantly IgG1 antibodies (Th2-like) with CT and mixed IgG1/IgG2a antibodies  
30 (Th0) with CpG oligonucleotide alone or in combination with CT. The proportion of IgG2a

isotype of antibodies, was about 10-times greater with CpG ODN than CT, indicating a greater Th1 influence of CpG ODN compared to CT. Furthermore, the combination of CpG ODN and CT gave a 50-times higher IgG2a:IgG1 ratio than CT alone (Figure 3). Following boost, anti-HBs were still predominantly IgG1 with CT and mixed with CpG oligonucleotide, although in the latter case, the proportion of IgG2a was now higher. Surprisingly, plasma anti-HBs after boost with CpG oligonucleotide and CT were now predominantly IgG2a (Th-1 like) (Figure 3). These findings indicate that CpG oligonucleotide as a mucosal adjuvant stimulates a Th1-like response, even in the presence of a strong Th2-like adjuvant like CT.

Similar results were found when LT was used in place of CT (Figure 7, Tables 2 and 3). CT and LT, which are closely related with considerable structural and functional homology, are both too toxic for use in humans. However there are a number of derivations of CT and LT that retain some adjuvant activity yet are much less toxic. One example is the B-subunit of CT (CTB) which is non-toxic since the toxicity is associated with the A subunit. Another example is LTK63, a genetically detoxified mutant of LT with no toxic enzymatic activity. Although these adjuvants are being used in human clinical trials, neither was as strong as CpG ODN for induction of systemic immunity (serum IgG) when each was used at 1  $\mu$ g (Figure 7). There was also a synergistic effect when CpG ODN and CTB or LTK63 were used together, however this was more noticeable for Th1-bias than for strength of the antibody response (Figure 7 and Table 2).

### **Example 3: Systemic CTL responses after mucosal immunization**

Only low levels of CTL were induced with HBsAg alone, however the addition of either CpG oligonucleotide or CT significantly increased HBsAg-specific CTL activity. CTL responses were equivalent for CT and CpG oligonucleotide, regardless of dose. However, a combination of CT and CpG oligonucleotide (1  $\mu$ g of each) increased CTL responses approximately two-fold. (Figure 4).

**Example 4: Mucosal humoral responses after mucosal immunization**

No anti-HBs S-IgA were detected in lung washes of mice immunized with 1 or 10 µg HBsAg alone. Nor were anti-HBs IgA detected with the low dose of antigen combined with a low dose (1 µg) of either CpG oligonucleotide or CT or with a high dose of CpG oligonucleotide; only  
5 low titers were detected with low dose antigen and high dose CT (Figure 5). However when low doses of both CpG oligonucleotide and CT (1 µg each) were used together with the low dose of antigen, significant levels of HBsAg-specific S-IgA could be detected in lung washes (Figure 5).

With a higher antigen dose (10 µg), S-IgA was detected in lung washes of mice administered the either low or high doses of CT and/or CpG oligonucleotide. Titers of IgA were  
10 significantly higher with 1 µg of the two adjuvants together than with 10 µg of CT or CpG oligonucleotide alone ( $p = 0.0003$  and  $<0.0001$  respectively) (Figure 5). IgA titers increased approximately ten-fold after boosting with both adjuvants. Thus CpG oligonucleotide can induce specific local mucosal immunity against antigen administered intranasally. Furthermore, similar to as was found for systemic response (above) CpG oligonucleotide acts in a synergistic fashion  
15 with CT for the induction of mucosal immunity.

IgA was also detected in fecal pellets of mice immunized with HBsAg and 10 µg CpG oligonucleotide. In contrast, only very low levels were detected in mice immunized with HBsAg in combination with CT (1 or 10 µg) (Figure 6). Thus, CpG oligonucleotide can induce mucosal immunity at distant mucosal sites.

**Example 5: Mucosal and Systemic Immune Response to other Mucosal Adjuvants*****Systemic immune responses***

IN delivery of HBsAg (1 µg) without adjuvant did not induce detectable anti-HBs IgG antibodies in the plasma of any mice (0/15). In contrast, high titers of anti-HBs IgG were induced  
25 in all mice when HBsAg was administered in combination with CpG, CT or LT as adjuvant (Figure 7, Table 2). At a low dose (1 µg) LT, CT and CpG gave equivalent anti-HBs IgG titers ( $p = 0.22$ ). At a high dose (10 µg) CT and LT gave higher titers than CpG, however 5/10 mice receiving this dose of LT died within 10 days. No detectable anti-HBs IgG was detected with a low dose (1 µg) of CTB or LTK63, however a high dose (10 µg) of CTB gave low anti-HBs IgG



endpoint ELISA titers and a high dose (10 µg) of LTK63 gave as good levels of anti-HBs IgG as a high dose (10 µg) of CpG ( $p = 0.97$ ) (Figure 7, Tables 2 and 3).

When used together, CpG and either LT or CT (1 µg each) appeared to have a synergistic effect since anti-HBs titers were 5 to 10 times higher than with any one of the three adjuvants alone (Figure 7). Indeed, CpG plus LT (1 µg each) gave a better response than 10 µg of CpG or LT alone ( $p = 0.007$ ,  $0.015$  respectively) and the response with CpG plus CT (1 µg each) was equal to that with 10 µg CT alone ( $p = 0.65$ ). In contrast, there was no synergistic effect with LTK63 plus CpG (1 µg each) for anti-HBs IgG titers, which were equivalent to those with 1 µg CpG alone ( $p = 0.40$ ). Surprisingly, CTB plus CpG (1 µg each) gave lower anti-HBs titers than 1 µg CpG alone ( $p = 0.007$ ) (Figure 7). Adjuvant effects with CpG ODN were due to the CpG motif rather than a non-specific effect of the ODN backbone since mice immunized with 1 µg of HBsAg plus 10 µg of non-CpG ODN had no (7/10) or very low (3/10) titers of anti-HBs IgG antibodies (data not shown).

Antibodies were predominantly IgG1 (Th2-like) with CT, CTB and LT and mixed IgG1/IgG2a (Th1/Th2) with LTK63. At a low dose (1 µg) responses with CpG were mixed IgG1/IgG2a (Th1/Th2), but at a higher dose (10 µg) were more Th1 (IgG2a >> IgG1). Responses were mixed Th1/Th2 with CT/CpG or CTB/CpG and more Th1 with LT/CpG. At a low dose (1 µg each) LTK63/CpG responses were Th1/Th2, but at a higher dose (10 µg each) were more Th1 (Table 3). Thus coadministration of CpG with other adjuvants shifted responses towards a more Th1-like response as indicated by a greater proportion of IgG2a antibodies.

### ***Mucosal immune responses***

When adjuvants were used alone, only mice receiving LT or LTK63 had detectable IgA in lung washes, however when CpG ODN was also included with CT or LT a greater number of animals responded or titers were higher than with comparable doses alone, suggesting a synergistic effect. CpG alone did not induce IgA. Neither did CTB, alone or combined with CpG (Table 3).

Only a few adjuvants on their own (LT and CpG) induced IgA in the feces, and then only in some animals. No significant IgA was detected with CT, CTB, LTK63 or non-CpG ODN. CpG and LT together resulted in IgA in the feces of a greater proportion of animals than either adjuvant alone suggesting an additive or synergistic effect. No such effects were evident with other combinations (Table 3).

**Table 2: Effect of adjuvant on HBsAg-specific antibody isotypes**

Adjuvant <sup>a</sup>	dose (μg)	Anti-HBs response		
		IgG2a <sup>b</sup>	IgG1 <sup>b</sup>	IgG2a:IgG1 <sup>c</sup>
5 none	-	0	0	N/A <sup>d</sup>
CT	1	36	1632	0.02
CT	10	406	3849	0.1
CTB	1	0	0	N/A
CTB	10	6	59	0.1
10 LT	1	226	6457	0.04
LT	10	895	2024	0.44
LTK63 <sup>-</sup>	1	0	0	N/A
LTK63 <sup>-</sup>	10	231	455	0.5
CpG ODN	1	146	403	0.4
CpG ODN	10	549	41	13.4
15 control ODN	1	0	0	N/A
control ODN	10	0	0	N/A
CT + CpG ODN	1 each	3376	2374	1.4
CTB + CpG ODN	1 each	0	0	N/A
20 LT + CpG ODN	1 each	6268	1438	4.4
LTK63 + CpG ODN	1 each	185	272	0.7
CT + control ODN	1 each	402	5087	0.08
CT + CpG ODN	10 each	= <sup>e</sup>	=	=
CTB + CpG ODN	10 each	227	208	1.1
25 LT + CpG ODN	10 each	=	=	=
LTK63 + CpG ODN	10 each	3170	413	7.7

Table 3. Effect of adjuvant on HBsAg-specific IgA responses

	Adjuvant <sup>a</sup>	dose (μg)	Anti-HBs response <sup>b</sup>			
			lung		fecal	
			IgA <sup>c</sup>	no. of responders	IgA <sup>d</sup>	no. of responders
5	none	-	0	0	0	0
	CT	1	0	0	0	0
	CT	10	0	0	0	0
	CTB	1	0	0	0	0
	CTB	10	0	0	0	0
10	LT	1	160 ± 68	5	100, 200	2
	LT	10	17 ± 5	3/3 (2 dead)	200 ± 50	3/3 (2 dead)
	LTK63	1	0	0	0	0
	LTK63	10	26 ± 6	4	0	0
	CpG ODN	1	0	0	100	1
15	CpG ODN	10	0	0	0	0
	control ODN	1	0	0	0	0
	control ODN	10	0	0	0	0
	CT + CpG ODN	1 each	17, 49	2	120	1
	CTB + CpG ODN	1 each	0	0	0	0
20	LT + CpG ODN	1 each	232 ± 34	5	150 ± 20	4
	LTK63 + CpG ODN	1 each	14	1	0	0
	CT + control ODN	1 each	0	0	0	0
	CT + CpG ODN	10 each	= <sup>e</sup>	=	=	=
	CTB + CpG ODN	10 each	17	1	0	0
25	LT + CpG ODN	10 each	=	=	=	=
	LTK63 + CpG ODN	10 each	28 ± 46	3/4	130	1/4

Table 4: summary of effects of different prime/boost strategies on HBsAg-specific immune responses

PRIME	BOOST	IgA			IgG	CTL	TCP
		L	S	F			
IM Ag + alum + CpG	none				X		X
	IM Ag + alum + CpG			X	X	X	X
	IN Ag	X	X		X	X	X
	IN Ag + CT	X	X		X	X	X
	IN Ag + CpG	X	X		X	X	X
IN Ag	IN Ag + CT + CpG	X	X	X	X	X	X
					X		
	IN Ag + CT			X	X	X	X
	IN Ag + CpG				X	X	X
	IN Ag + CT + CpG	X	X	X	X	X	X
IN Ag + CT + CpG	none				X		X

L: lung, cut-off GMT = 10  
 S: saliva, cut-off OD<sub>450</sub> x 10<sup>3</sup> = 100  
 F: fecal, cut-off OD<sub>450</sub> x 10<sup>3</sup> = 100

CTL, cut-off 20% at E:T 100:1  
 TCP, cut-off 2500cpm

Ag: 1 µg HBsAg  
 CpG: 1 µg #1826, CT: 1 µg, alum: 25 µg

## **REFERENCES**

- Alpar HO, Ozsoy Y, Bowen J, Eyles JE, Conway BR, Williamson ED. Potential of particulate carriers for the mucosal delivery of DNA vaccines. *Biochemical Society Transactions* 1997;25(2):337S.
- 5 Ballas, Z. K., W. L. Rasmussen, and A. M. Krieg. 1996. Induction of natural killer activity in murine and human cells by CpG motifs in oligodeoxynucleotides and bacterial DNA. *J. Immunol.* 157, 1840.
- Bird, A. P. CpG islands as gene markers in the vertebrate nucleus. 1987. *Trends in Genetics* 3:342.
- 10 Bowersock TL, Shalaby WS, Levy M, Samuels ML, Lallone R, White MR, Borie DL, Lehmeyer J, Park K. Evaluation of an orally administered vaccine, using hydrogels containing bacterial exotoxins of *Pasteurella haemolytica*, in cattle. *Am. J. Vet. Res.* 1994; 55: 502-9.
- Bueler H and Mulligan RC. Induction of antigen-specific tumor immunity by genetic and cellular vaccines against MAGE: enhanced tumor protection by coexpression of granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor and B7-1. 1996; 2; 545-555.
- 15 Chace, J. H., N. A. Hooker, K. L. Mildenstein, A. M. Krieg, and J. S. Cowdery. 1997. Bacterial DNA-induced NK cell IFN- $\gamma$  production is dependent on macrophage secretion of IL-12. *Clin. Immunol. Immunopath.*, 84:185.
- 20 Chow YH, Huang WL, Chi WK, Chu YD, Tao MH. Improvement of hepatitis B virus DNA vaccines by plasmids coexpressing hepatitis B surface antigen and interleukin-2. *Journal of Virology* 1997;71(1):169-78.
- Cong Y, Weaver CT, Elson CO. The mucosal adjuvanticity of cholera toxin involves enhancement of costimulatory activity by selective up-regulation of B7.2 expression. *J. Immunol.* 1997; 159: 5301-8.
- 25 Constant SL, Bottomly K. Induction of Th1 and Th2 CD4+ T cell responses: the alternative approaches. *Ann. Rev. Immunol.* 1997; 15: 297-322.
- Cowdery, J. S., J. H. Chace, and A. M. Krieg. 1996. Bacterial DNA induces in vivo interferon- $\gamma$  production by NK cells and increases sensitivity to endotoxin. *J. Immunol.* 156:4570.

Davis HL, Weeratna R, Waldschmidt TJ, Schorr J and Krieg AM. CpG DNA is a potent adjuvant in mice immunized with recombinant hepatitis B surface antigen. *J. Immunol.* 1998; 160: 870-876.

5 de Haan L, Verweij WR, Feil IK, Lijnema TH, Hol WG, Agsteribbe E, Wilschut J. Mutants of the *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin with reduced ADP-ribosylation activity or no activity retain the immunogenic properties of the native holotoxin. *Infect. Immun.* 1996; 64: 5413-6.

10 Delong R, Stephenson K, Loftus T, Fisher M, Alahari S, Nolting A, Juliano RL. Characterization of complexes of oligonucleotides with polyamidoamine starburst dendrimers and effects on intracellular delivery. *J. Pharmac. Sci.* 1997; 86: 762-4.

Douce G, Turcotte C, Cropley I, Roberts M, Pizza M, Domenghini M, Rappuoli R, Dougan G. Mutants of *Escherichia coli* heat-labile toxin lacking ADP-ribosyltransferase activity act as nontoxic, mucosal adjuvants. *PNAS.* 1995; 92: 1644-8.

15 Eldridge J, Staas JK., Meulbroek JA., McGhee JR. Biodegradable microspheres as a vaccine delivery system. *Molecular Immunology* 1991; 28: 287-294.

Gallichan WS, Rosenthal KL. Specific secretory immune responses in the female genital tract following intranasal immunization with a recombinant adenovirus expressing glycoprotein B of herpes simplex virus. *Vaccine* 1995;13(16):1589-95.

20 Geissler M, Gesien A, Tokushige K, Wands JR. Enhancement of cellular and humoral immune responses to hepatitis C virus core protein using DNA-based vaccines augmented with cytokine-expressing plasmids. *J Immunol* 1997;158(3):1231-7.

Gregoriadis G. Engineering liposomes for drug delivery: progress and problems. *Trends Biotech.* 1995; 13: 527-537.

25 Halpern, M. D., R. J. Kurlander, and D. S. Pisetsky. 1996. Bacterial DNA induces murine interferon- $\gamma$  production by stimulation of interleukin-12 and tumor necrosis factor- $\alpha$ . *Cell. Immunol.* 167:72.

Haneberg B, Kendall D, Amerongen HM, Apter FM, Kraehenbuhl J-P, and Neutra MR. Induction of specific immunoglobulin A in the small intestine, colon-rectum, and vagina measured by a new method for collection of secretions from local mucosal surfaces. *Infect. Immun.*

1994; 15-23.

Hogg JC. The pathology of asthma. *APMIS*. 1997; 105: 10: 735-45.

Holmgren J, Lycke N, Czerkinsky C. Cholera toxin and cholera B subunit as oral-mucosal adjuvant and antigen vector systems. *Vaccine* 1993;11:1179-1184.

- 5   Hornquist E, Lycke N. Cholera toxin adjuvant greatly promotes antigen priming of T cells. *Eur. J. Immunol.* 1993; 23: 2136-43.

Kay AB. TH2-type cytokines in asthma. *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.* 1996; 796: 1-8.

- Kim JJ, Ayyavoo V, Bagarazzi ML, Chattergoon MA, Dang K, Wang B, Boyer JD, and Weiner  
D B. In vivo engineering of a cellular immune response by coadministration of IL-12  
10   expression vector with a DNA immunogen. *J. Immunol.* 1997;158: 816-26.

Klinman DM, Yamshchikov G, and Ishigatsubo Y. Contribution of CpG motifs to the immunogenicity of DNA vaccines. *J. Immunol.* 1997; 158: 3635-3659.

- Klinman, D., A. -K. Yi, S. L. Beaucage, J. Conover, and A. M. Krieg. 1996. CpG motifs  
expressed by bacterial DNA rapidly induce lymphocytes to secrete IL-6, IL-12 and IFN.  
15   *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:2879.

Krieg, A. M., A. -K. Yi, S. Matson, T. J. Waldschmidt, G. A. Bishop, R. Teasdale, G. Koretzky,  
and D. Klinman. CpG motifs in bacterial DNA trigger direct B-cell activation. 1995.  
*Nature* 374:546.

- Krieg, A. M. 1996An innate immune defense mechanism based on the recognition of CpG  
20   motifs in microbial DNA. *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 128:128.

Kukowska-Latallo JF, Bielinska AU, Johnson J, Spindler R, Tomalia DA, Baker JR Jr. Efficient transfer of genetic material into mammalian cells using Starburst polyamidoamine dendrimers. *PNAS*. 1996; 93: 4897-902.

- Lamm ME, Mazanec MB, Nedrud JG, Kaetzel CS. Mechanisms of IgA-mediated mucosal  
25   defense. *Vaccine Res.* 1992;1:169-173.

Lycke N, Tsuji T, and Holmgren J. The adjuvant effect of *Vibrio cholerae* and *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxins is linked to their ADP-ribosyltransferase activity. *Eur. J. immunol.* 1992; 22: 2277-2281.

Maloy KJ. Donachie AM. Mowat AM. Induction of Th1 and Th2 CD4+ T cell responses by oral or parenteral immunization with ISCOMS. *Eur. J. Immunol.* 1995; 25: 2835-41.

Mannino RJ and Gould-Fogerite S. Lipid matrix-based vaccines for mucosal and systemic immunization. In: *Vaccine Design: The subunit and adjuvant approach.* (ed. Powell MF and Newman MJ) Plenum Press, New York. 1995; 363-387.

McGhee JR, Mestecky J, Dertzbaugh MT, Eldridge JH, Hirasawa M, Kiyono H. The mucosal immune system: from fundamental concepts to vaccine development. *Vaccine* 1992;10:75-88.

Messina, J. P., G. S. Gilkeson, and D. S. Pisetsky. 1991. Stimulation of in vitro murine lymphocyte proliferation by bacterial DNA. *J. Immunol.* 147:1759.

Mestecky J, McGhee JR. Prospects for human mucosal vaccines. In: Ciardi JE, ed. *Genetically Engineered vaccines.* New York: Plenum Press, 1992:13-23.

O'Hagan DT. Oral immunization and the common mucosal immune system. In: O'Hagan DT, ed. *Novel Delivery Systems for Oral Vaccines.* Boca Raton: CRC Press, 1994:1-24.

O'Hagan DT, Rahman D, Jeffery H, Sharif S, Challacombe SJ. Controlled release microparticles for oral immunization. *Int. J. Pharm.* 1994; 108: 133-139.

Pizza M, Fontana MR, Giuliani MM, Domenighini M, Magagnoli C, Giannelli V, Nucci D, Hol W, Manetti R, Rappuoli R. A genetically detoxified derivative of heat-labile *Escherichia coli* enterotoxin induces neutralizing antibodies against the A subunit. *J. Exp. Med.* 1994; 180: 2147-53.

Rappuoli R, Douce G, Dougan G, Pizza M. Genetic detoxification of bacterial toxins: a new approach to vaccine development. *Int Arch Allergy Immunol.* 1995; 108: 327-33.

Sato Y, Roman M, Tighe H, Lee D, Corr M, Nguyen MD, Silverman GJ, Lotz M, Carson DA, Raz E. Immunostimulatory DNA sequences necessary for effective intradermal gene immunization. *Science.* 1996; 273: 352-4.

Schirmbeck R, Melber K, Kuhröber A, Janowicz ZA and Reimann J. Immunization with soluble hepatitis B virus surface protein elicits murine H-2 class I-restricted CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses *in vivo*. *J. Immunol.* 1994; 152: 1110-1119.

Sjolander A, Lovgren Bengtsson K, Johansson M, Morein B. Kinetics, localization and isotype



profile of antibody responses to immune stimulating complexes (ISCOMS) containing human influenza virus envelope glycoproteins. *Scand. J. Immunol.* 1996; 43:164-72.

Sjolander A. van't Land B. Lovgren Bengtsson K. Iscoms containing purified Quillaja saponins upregulate both Th1-like and Th2-like immune responses. *Cell. Immunol.* 1997; 177: 69-76.

Snider DP. The mucosal adjuvant activities of ADP-ribosylating bacterial enterotoxins. *Crit. Rev. Immunol.* 1995; 15: 317-48.

Spangler BD. Structure and function of cholera toxin and the related *Escherichia coli* heat-labile enterotoxin. *Microbiol. Rev.* 1992; 56: 622-647.

10 Staats HF, Jackson RJ, Marinaro M, Takahashi I, Kiyono H, McGhee JR. Mucosal immunity to infection with implications for vaccine development. *Current Biology.* 1994;6:572-583.

Tokunaga, T, H. Yamamoto, S. Shimada, H. Abe, T. Fukuda, Y. Fujisawa, Y. Furutani, O. Yano, T. Kataoka, T. Sudo, N. Makiguchi, and T. Suganuma. 1984. Antitumor activity of deoxyribonucleic acid fraction from mycobacterium bovis GCG. I. Isolation, physicochemical characterization, and antitumor activity. *JNCI* 72:955.

15 Tsuji T, Hamajima K, Ishii N, Aoki I, Fukushima J, Xin KQ, Kawamoto S, Sasaki S, Matsunaga K, Ishigatsubo Y, Tani K, Okubo T, and Okuda K. Immunomodulatory effects of a plasmid expressing B7-2 on human immunodeficiency virus-1-specific cell-mediated immunity induced by a plasmid encoding the viral antigen. *Eur. J. Immunol.* 1997; 27: 782-7.

20 Valodas, J., Davies, J. K., Wright, P.J., Strugnell R.A. Intranasal immunization with liposomes induces strong mucosal immune responses in mice. *Eur. J. Immunol.* 1995; 25: 969-975.

Weeratna R, Brazolot Millan CL, Krieg AM, and Davis HL. Reduction of antigen expression from DNA vaccines by co-administered oligodeoxynucleotides. *Anti. Nucl. Acid Res.*(in press).

25 Yamamoto, S., T. Yamamoto, S. Shimada, E. Kuramoto, O. Yano, T. Kataoka, and T. Tokunaga. 1992. DNA from bacteria, but not from vertebrates, induces interferons, activates natural killer cells and inhibits tumor growth. *Microbiol. Immunol.* 36:983.

Yi, A.-K., Cowdery, J.S., J.H. Chace, and A.M. Krieg. 1996. IFN- $\gamma$  promotes IL-6 and Ig-M secretion in response to CpG motifs in bacterial DNA and ODN. *J. Immunol.*, 156:558.

The foregoing written specification is considered to be sufficient to enable one skilled in the art to practice the invention. The present invention is not to be limited in scope by examples provided, since the examples are intended as a single illustration of one aspect of the invention and other functionally equivalent embodiments are within the scope of the invention. Various  
5 modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and fall within the scope of the appended claims. The advantages and objects of the invention are not necessarily encompassed by each embodiment of the invention.

We claim:

CLAIMS

1. A method for inducing a mucosal immune response, comprising:

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal  
5 immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following  
formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the mucosal immune response, and wherein  
10 the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject is actively exposed to the antigen.

3. The method of claim 2, wherein the antigen is delivered to a mucosal surface.

4. The method of claim 2, wherein the antigen is administered concurrently with the  
oligonucleotide.

15 5. The method of claim 2, wherein the antigen is delivered in conjunction with a colloidal  
dispersion system.

6. The method of claim 5, wherein the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the  
group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-  
based systems.

20 7. The method of claim 6, wherein the lipid-based system is selected from the group  
consisting of oil-in-water emulsions, micelles, mixed micelles, and liposomes.

8. The method of claim 2, further comprising the step of administering a non-  
oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen.

9. The method of claim 8, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected  
25 from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives

of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers, and ISCOMS.

10. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject is passively exposed to the antigen.

5 11. The method of claim 10, wherein the subject is a subject at risk of developing an allergic reaction.

12. The method of claim 10, wherein the subject is a subject at risk of developing an infectious disease.

13. The method of claim 11, wherein the subject is at risk of developing cancer.

10 14. The method of claim 1, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

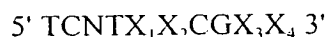
15. The method of claim 1, wherein the oligonucleotide includes a phosphate backbone modification which is a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification.

16. The method of claim 15, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

15 17. The method of claim 15, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 3' end of the oligonucleotide.

18. The method of claim 1, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, 20 TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA.

19. The method of claim 1, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about 25 0-25 nucleotides.

20. The method of claim 1, wherein the antigen is selected from the group consisting of cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, allergens, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites.

5        21. The method of claim 1, wherein the antigen is an allergen.

22. The method of claim 1, wherein the antigen is derived from an infectious organism selected from the group consisting of infectious bacteria, infectious viruses, infectious parasites, and infectious fungi.

23. The method of claim 1, wherein the subject is an asthmatic.

10       24. The method of claim 1, further comprising administering a cytokine to the subject.

25. The method of claim 1, further comprising administering a B-7 costimulatory molecule.

26. The method of claim 1, wherein the mucosal immunity is induced in a remote site.

27. The method of claim 1, further comprising administering a boost of oligonucleotide.

15       28. The method of claim 8, further comprising administering a boost of the oligonucleotide and the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant.

29. A method for inducing a mucosal immune response, comprising

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an antigen and a plasmid vector, having a sequence including at least the  
20       following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides.

30. The method of claim 29, wherein the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

31. The method of claim 29, wherein the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector.

32. The method of claim 31, wherein the antigen is encoded by the plasmid vector.

33. The method of claim 29, wherein the plasmid vector includes a nucleic acid sequence  
5 which operatively encodes for a cytokine.

34. The method of claim 29, wherein the antigen and the plasmid vector are administered orally.

35. The method of claim 29, wherein the mucosal immunity is induced in a remote site.

36. The method of claim 29, wherein at least 50µg of the plasmid vector is administered  
10 to the subject.

37. The method of claim 29, further comprising the step of administering a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen.

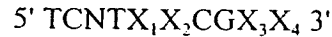
38. The method of claim 37, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives  
15 of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers, and ISCOMS.

39. The method of claim 29, further comprising administering a boost of oligonucleotide.

40. The method of claim 37, further comprising administering a boost of the  
20 oligonucleotide and the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant.

41. The method of claim 29, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA.

42. The method of claim 29, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $\text{X}_1$ ,  $\text{X}_2$ ,  $\text{X}_3$ , and  $\text{X}_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about 0-25 nucleotides.

43. The method of claim 29, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

44. The method of claim 29, wherein the oligonucleotide includes a phosphate backbone modification which is a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification.

45. The method of claim 44, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

46. The method of claim 44, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 3' end of the oligonucleotide.

47. A method for inducing a mucosal immune response, comprising administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a mucosal immune response of an antigen and of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $\text{X}_1$ ,  $\text{X}_2$ ,  $\text{X}_3$ , and  $\text{X}_4$  are nucleotides, and wherein the antigen is encoded by a nucleic acid vector.

48. The method of claim 47, wherein the antigen and the oligonucleotide are administered orally.

49. The method of claim 47, wherein the mucosal immunity is induced in a remote site.

50. The method of claim 47, wherein at least 50 $\mu\text{g}$  of the plasmid vector is administered to the subject.

51. The method of claim 47, further comprising the step of administering a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen.

52. The method of claim 51, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers, and ISCOMS.

53. The method of claim 47, further comprising administering a boost of oligonucleotide.

54. The method of claim 47, further comprising administering a boost of the oligonucleotide and the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant.

55. The method of claim 47, wherein the oligonucleotide has a backbone selected from the group consisting of a phosphodiester backbone and a chimeric backbone.

56. The method of claim 47 wherein the oligonucleotide has a phosphorothioate backbone.

57. The method of 56 wherein plasmid and oligonucleotides are delivered with a colloidal dispersion system.

58. The method of 57 wherein the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems.

59. The method of 56 wherein plasmid and oligonucleotide are coated onto gold particles and are delivered with a gene-gun.

60. The method of claim 47, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA, ApA, ApT, ApG, CpT, CpA, CpG, TpA, TpT, and TpG; and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT, ApT, TpG, ApG, CpG, TpC, ApC, CpC, TpA, ApA, and CpA.

61. The method of claim 47, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



62. The method of claim 47, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

64. The method of claim 62, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

66. A method for inducing a mucosal immune response in a subject, comprising:

15 5' X<sub>1</sub> X<sub>2</sub>CGX<sub>3</sub> X<sub>4</sub> 3'

administering to the subject a hormone to induce the mucosal immune response.

20 68. The method of claim 66, wherein the hormone is administered systemically.

orally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

70. The method of claim 69, wherein the antigen is administered orally.

5        71. The method of claim 69, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide.

72. The method of claim 69, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

73. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising  
10        orally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of a CpG containing plasmid, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

15        74. The method of claim 73, wherein the antigen is administered orally.

75. The method of claim 73, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the CpG containing plasmid.

76. The method of claim 73, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

20        77. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising

intranasally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

78. The method of claim 77, wherein the antigen is administered intranasally.

5        79. The method of claim 77, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide

80. The method of claim 77, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

81. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising  
10        rectally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

15

82. The method of claim 81, wherein the antigen is administered rectally.

83. The method of claim 81, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide.

84. The method of claim 81, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective  
20        amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

85. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising  
vaginally administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response

of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

5 86. The method of claim 85, wherein the antigen is administered vaginally.

87. The method of claim 85, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide.

88. The method of claim 85, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

10 89. A method for inducing an immune response, comprising

ocularly administering to a subject an effective amount for inducing an immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

15 exposing the subject to an antigen to induce the immune response.

90. The method of claim 89, wherein the antigen is administered ocularly.

91. The method of claim 89, wherein the antigen is administered simultaneously with the oligonucleotide.

20 92. The method of claim 89, wherein the oligonucleotide is administered in an effective amount for inducing mucosal immunity.

93. A method for inducing a systemic immune response, comprising

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a systemic

immune response of an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

5 administering to the mucosal surface of the subject an antigen to induce the systemic immune response.

94. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is delivered in conjunction with a colloidal dispersion system.

95. The method of claim 94, wherein the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the  
10 group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems.

96. The method of claim 95, wherein the lipid-based system is selected from the group consisting of oil-in-water emulsions, micelles, mixed micelles, and liposomes.

97. The method of claim 93, further comprising the step of administering a non-  
15 oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant in conjunction with the antigen and the oligonucleotide.

98. The method of claim 97, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP polymers,  
20 and ISCOMS.

99. The method of claim 93, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

100. The method of claim 93, wherein the oligonucleotide includes a phosphate backbone modification which is a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification.

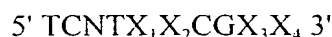
101. The method of claim 100, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the  
25 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

102. The method of claim 100, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the

3' end of the oligonucleotide.

103. The method of claim 93, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA and ApA and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT or TpC.

5 104. The method of claim 93, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about 0-25 nucleotides.

10 105. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is selected from the group consisting of cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, allergens, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites.

106. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is an allergen.

15 107. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is derived from an infectious organism selected from the group consisting of infectious bacteria, infectious viruses, infectious parasites, and infectious fungi.

20 108. The method of claim 93, wherein the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector, and wherein the antigen does not produce a systemic immune response when administered to the mucosal surface alone.

109. A method for inducing a systemic immune response, comprising

administering to a mucosal surface of a subject an effective amount for inducing a systemic immune response of a combination of a non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant and an oligonucleotide, having a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein C and G are unmethylated, wherein  $X_1$ ,  $X_2$ ,  $X_3$ , and  $X_4$  are nucleotides, and

exposing the subject an antigen to induce the systemic immune response.

110. The method of claim 109, wherein the subject is actively exposed to the antigen and wherein the antigen is delivered in conjunction with a colloidal dispersion system.

5 111. The method of claim 110, wherein the colloidal dispersion system is selected from the group consisting of macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads, and lipid-based systems.

112. The method of claim 111, wherein the lipid-based system is selected from the group consisting of oil-in-water emulsions, micelles, mixed micelles, and liposomes.

10 113. The method of claim 110, wherein the antigen is delivered to a mucosal surface.

114. The method of claim 113, wherein the non-oligonucleotide mucosal adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of cholera toxin, derivatives of cholera toxin, labile toxin, derivatives of labile toxin, alum, MLP, MDP, saponins such as QS21, cytokines, oil-in-water and other emulsion formulations such as MF59, SAF, Montanide ISA 720 and PROVAX, PCPP  
15 polymers, and ISCOMS.

115. The method of claim 109, wherein the oligonucleotide is 8 to 100 nucleotides in length.

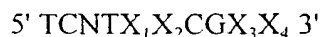
116. The method of claim 109, wherein the oligonucleotide includes a phosphate backbone modification which is a phosphorothioate or phosphorodithioate modification.

20 117. The method of claim 116, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 5' end of the oligonucleotide.

118. The method of claim 116, wherein the phosphate backbone modification occurs at the 3' end of the oligonucleotide.

119. The method of claim 109, wherein  $X_1X_2$  are nucleotides selected from the group  
25 consisting of: GpT, GpG, GpA and ApA and  $X_3X_4$  are nucleotides selected from the group consisting of: TpT, CpT or TpC.

120. The method of claim 109, wherein the oligonucleotide has a sequence including at least the following formula:



wherein  $\text{X}_1$ ,  $\text{X}_2$ ,  $\text{X}_3$ , and  $\text{X}_4$  are nucleotides, N is a nucleic acid sequence composed of from about  
5 0-25 nucleotides.

121. The method of claim 109, wherein the antigen is selected from the group consisting of cells, cell extracts, proteins, polypeptides, peptides, polysaccharides, polysaccharide conjugates, peptide mimics of polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids, carbohydrates, allergens, viruses and viral extracts and multicellular organisms such as parasites.

10 122. The method of claim 109, wherein the antigen is an allergen.

123. The method of claim 109, wherein the antigen is derived from an infectious organism selected from the group consisting of infectious bacteria, infectious viruses, infectious parasites, and infectious fungi.

124. The method of claim 109, wherein the antigen is not encoded in a nucleic acid vector.

15



1/13

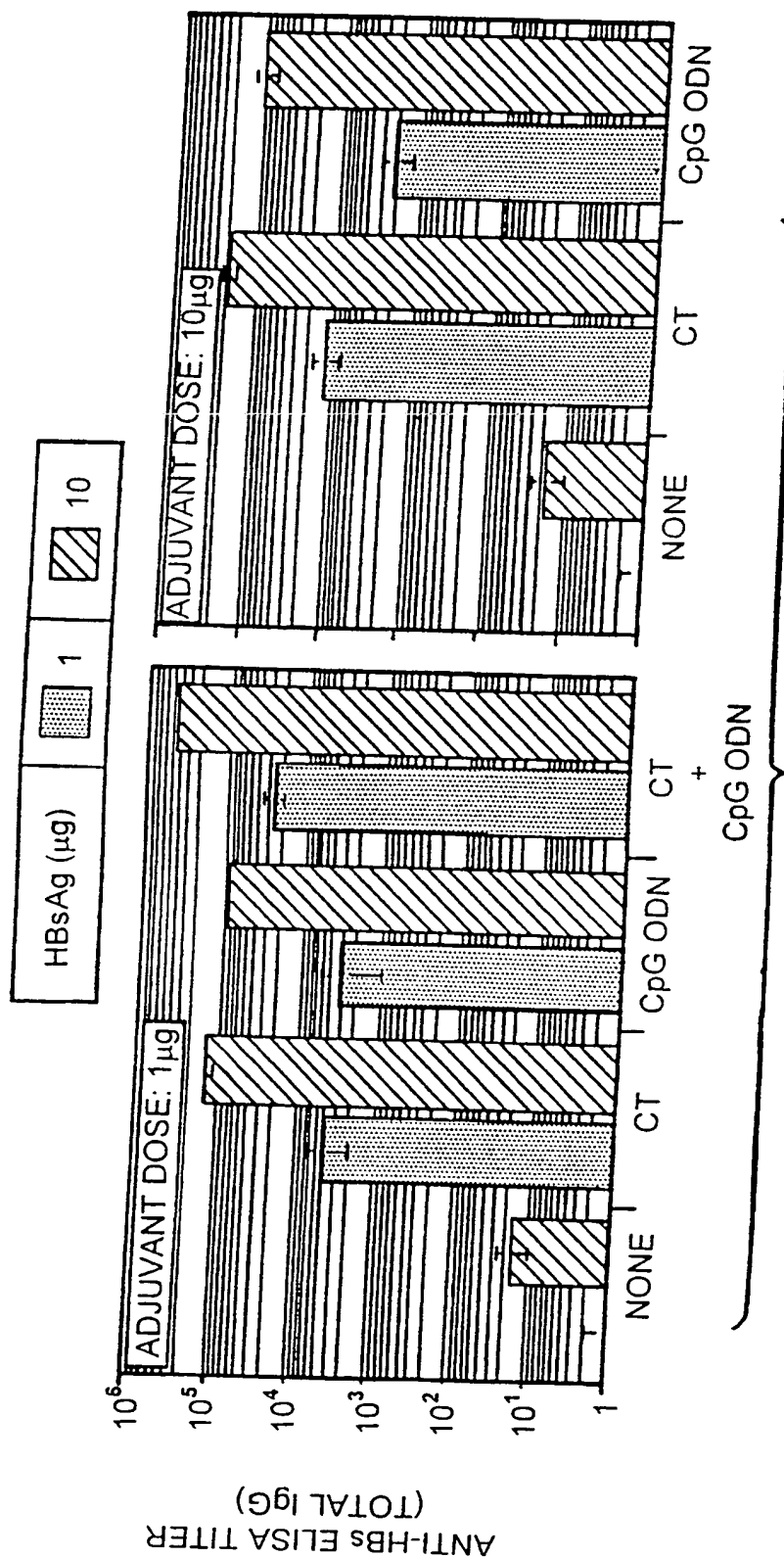
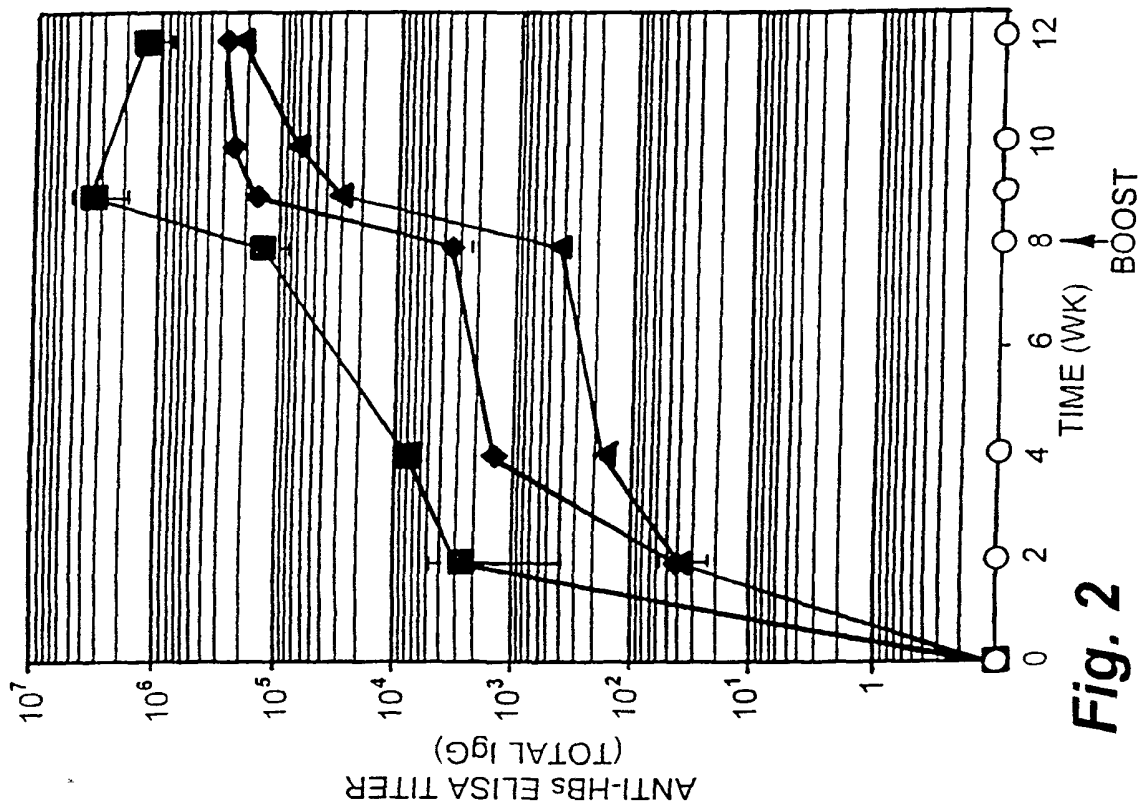
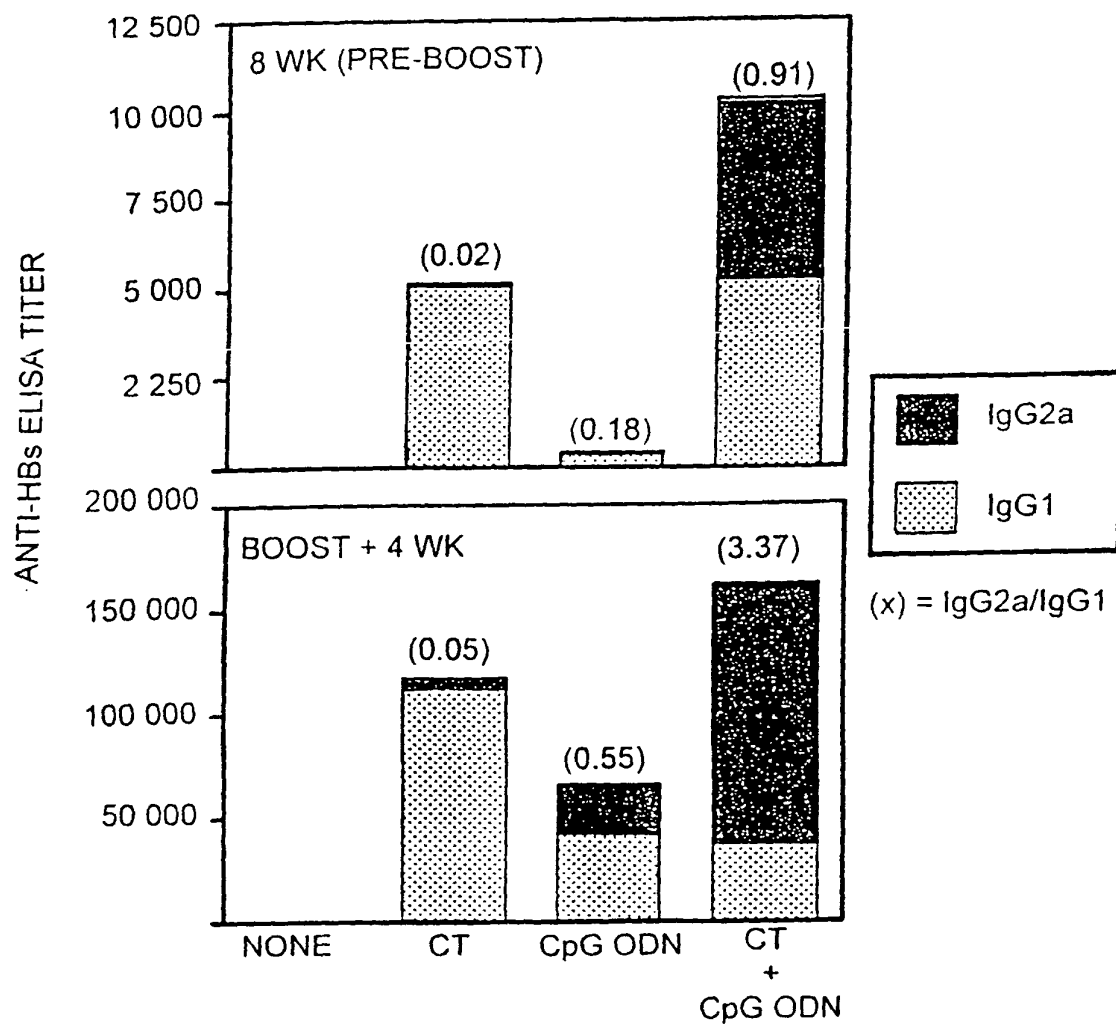


Fig. 1

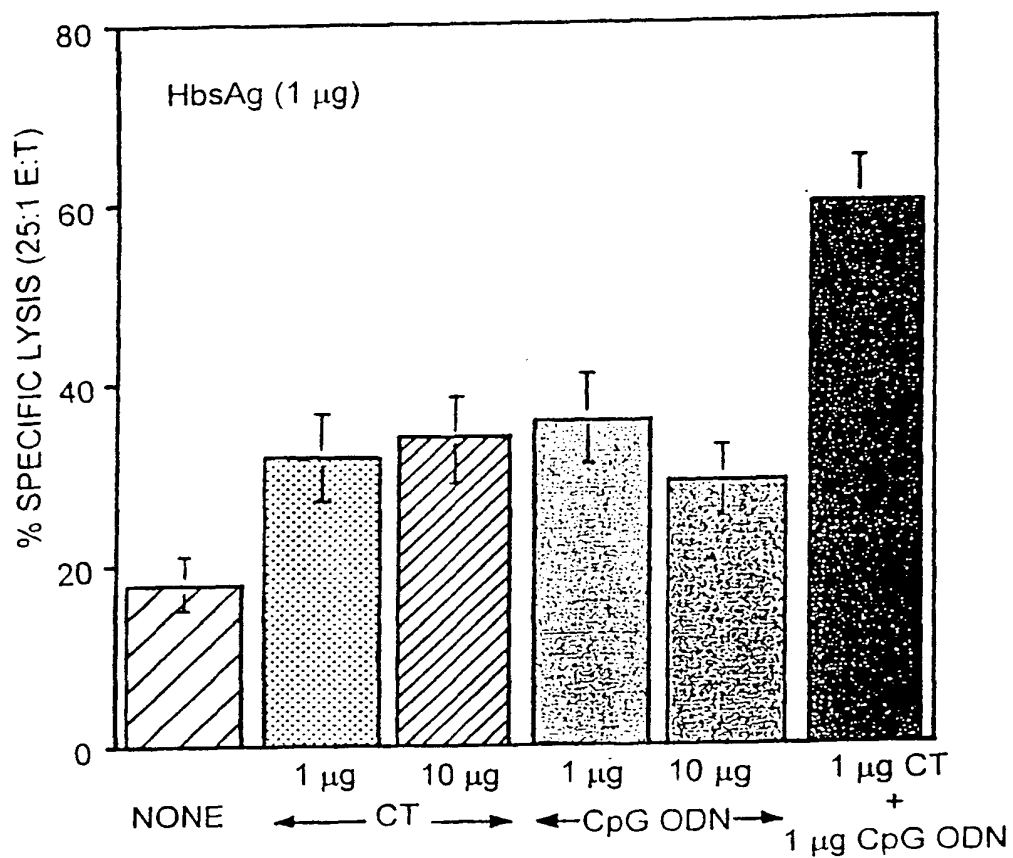
2/13



3/13

**Fig. 3**

4/13

**Fig. 4**

5/13

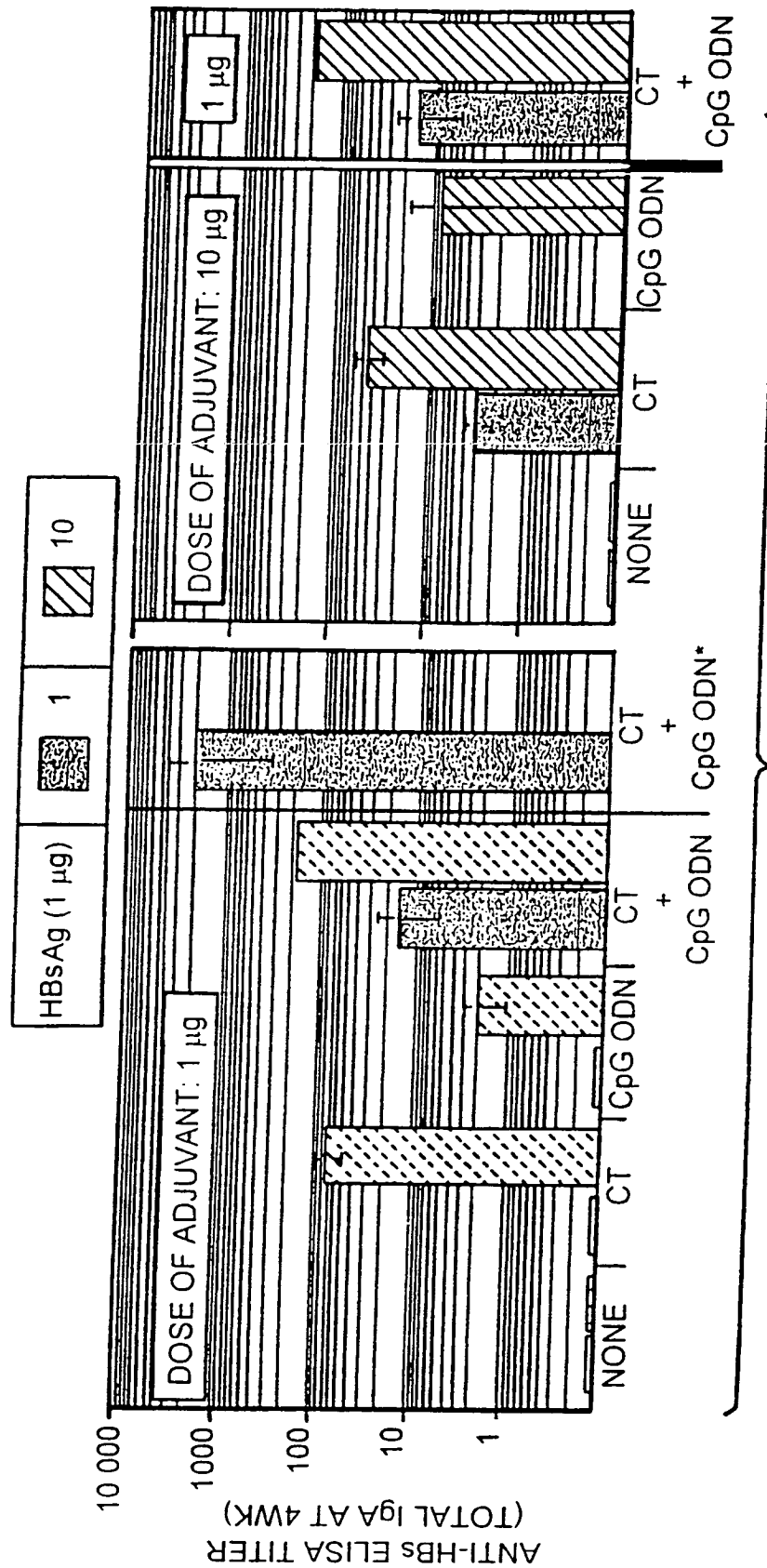


Fig. 5

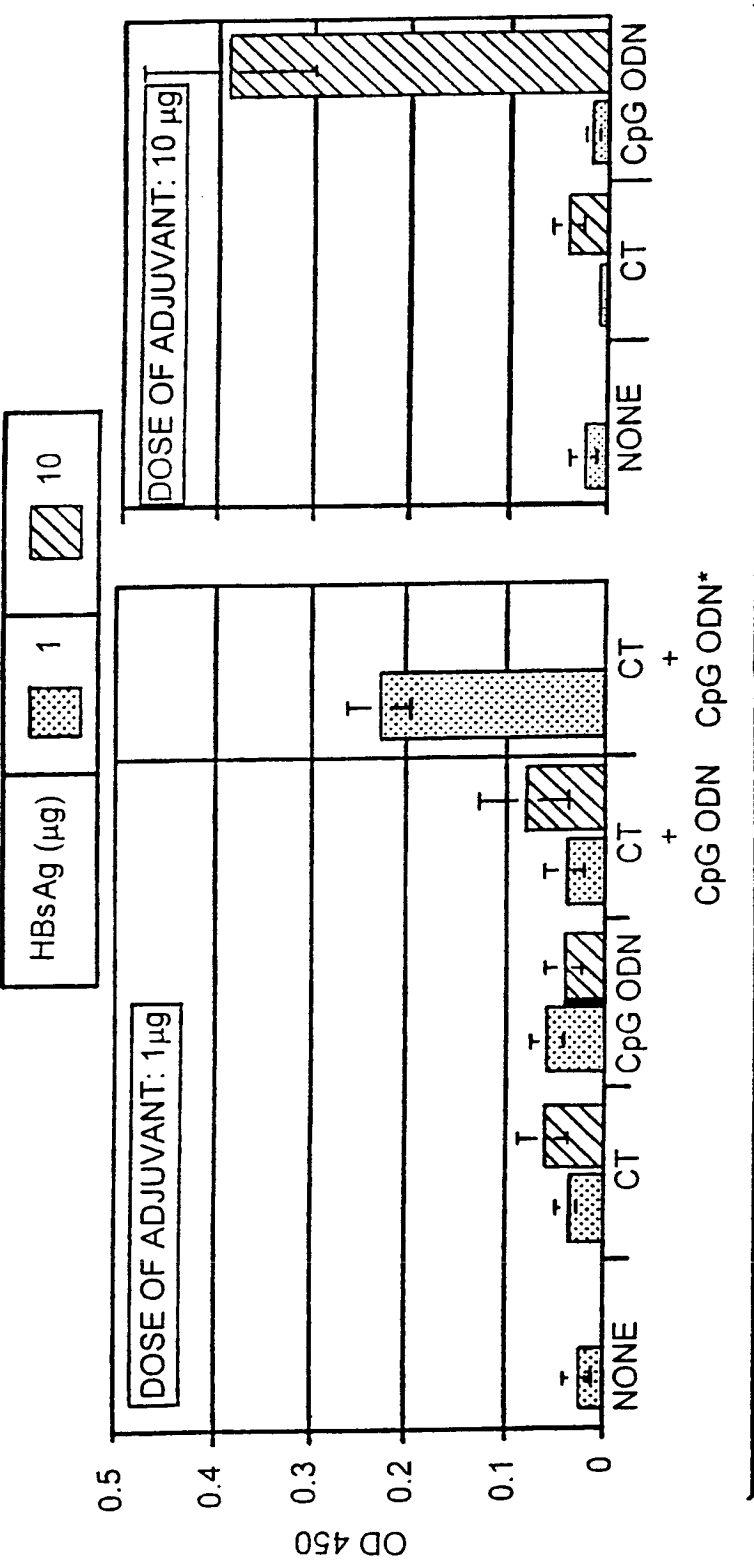


Fig. 6

7/13

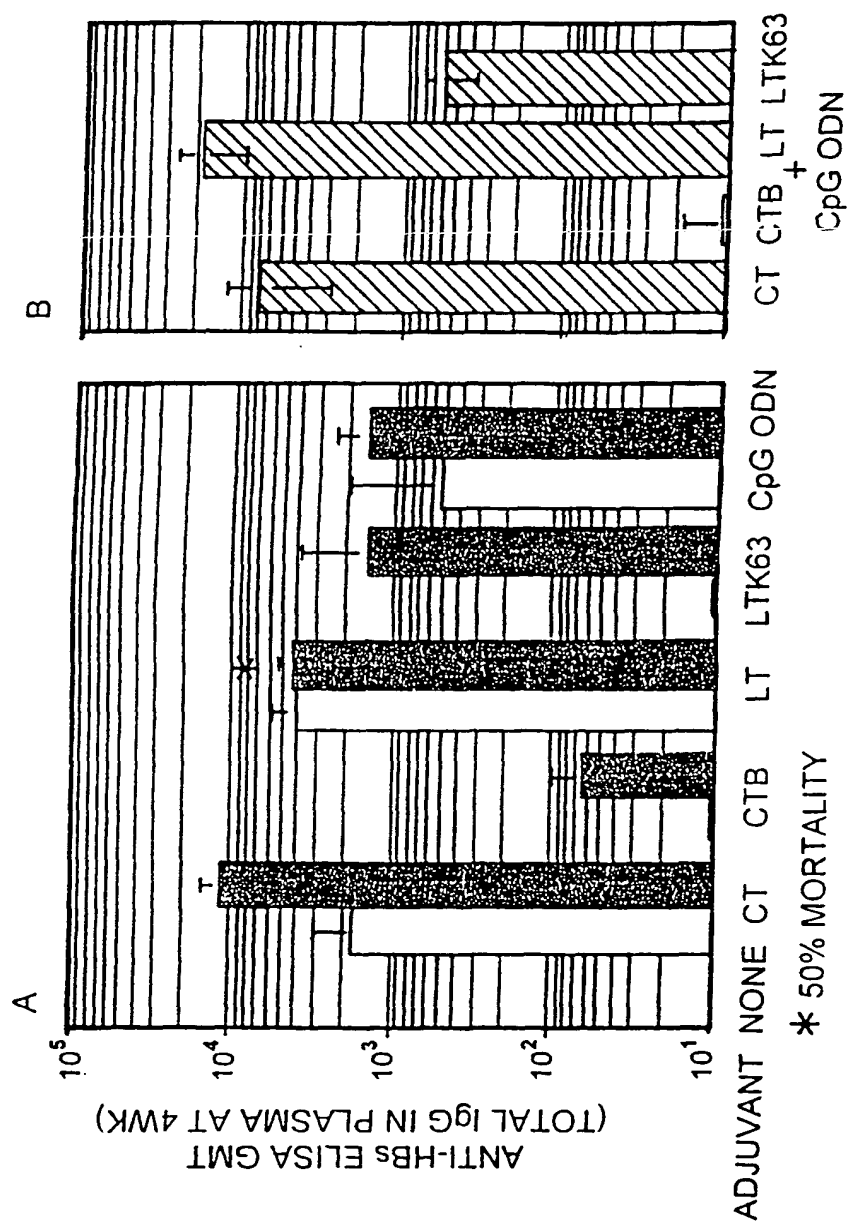
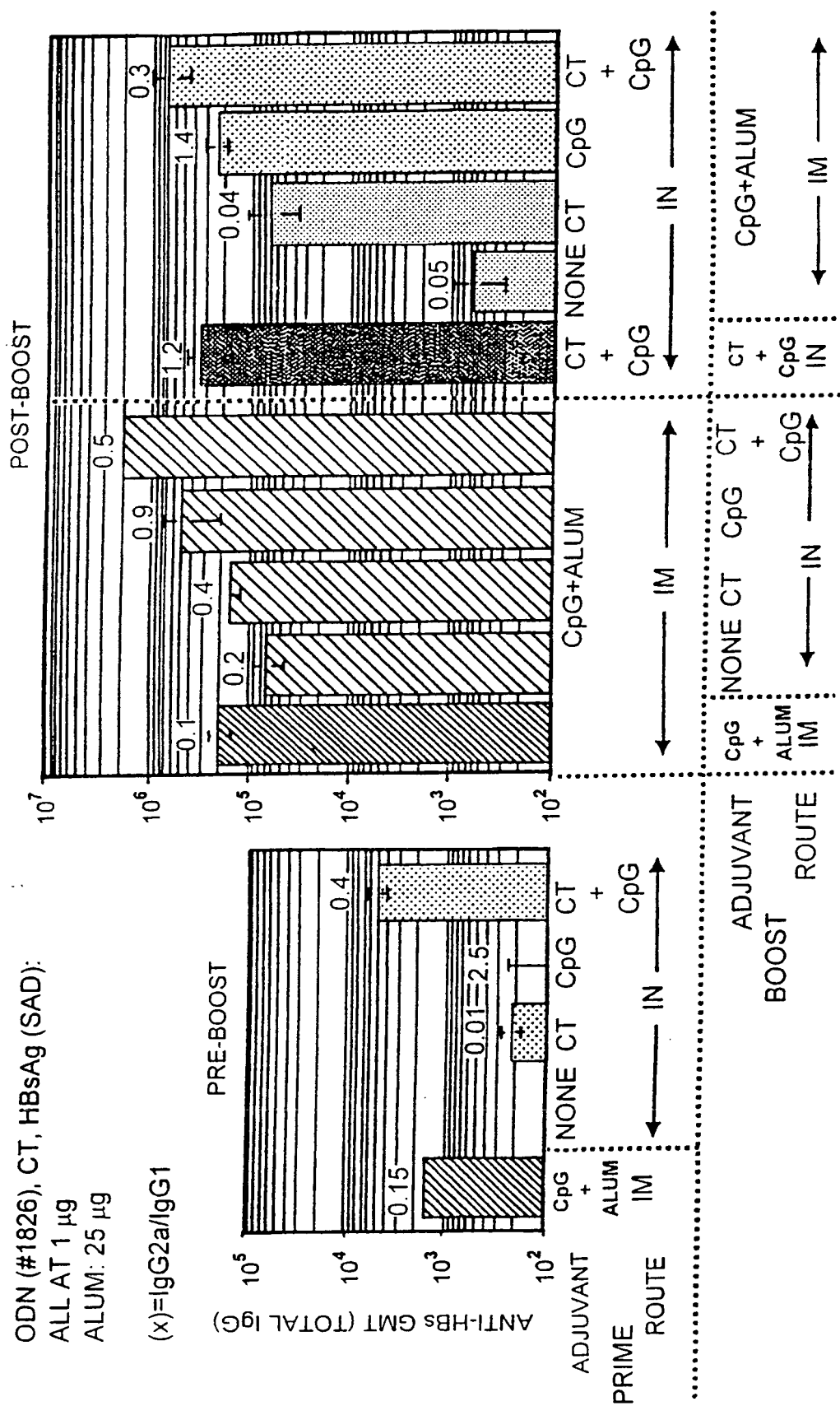


Fig. 7





9/13

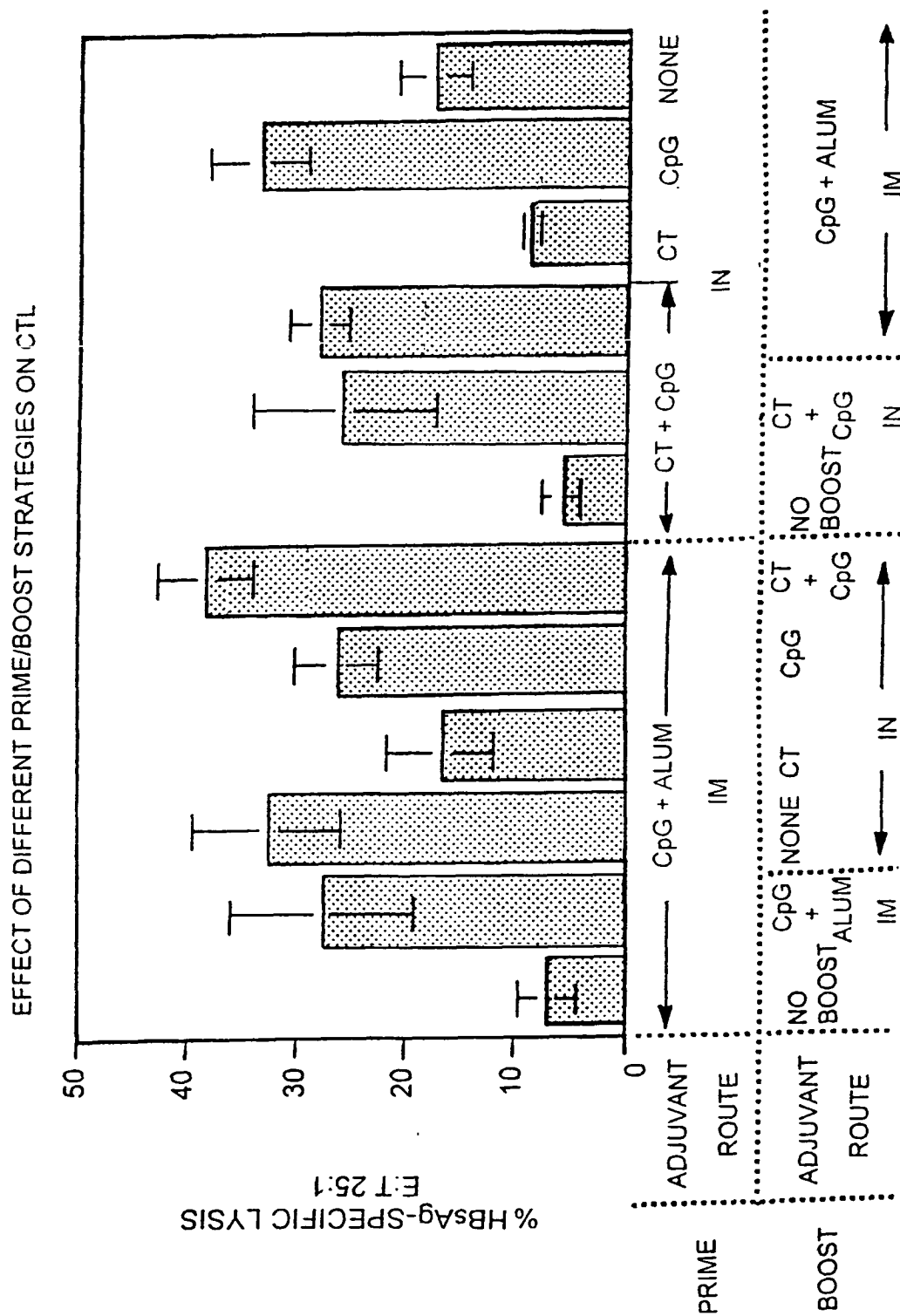


Fig. 9

10/13

EFFECT OF PRIME/BOOST STRATEGIES ON T-CELL PROLIFERATIONS

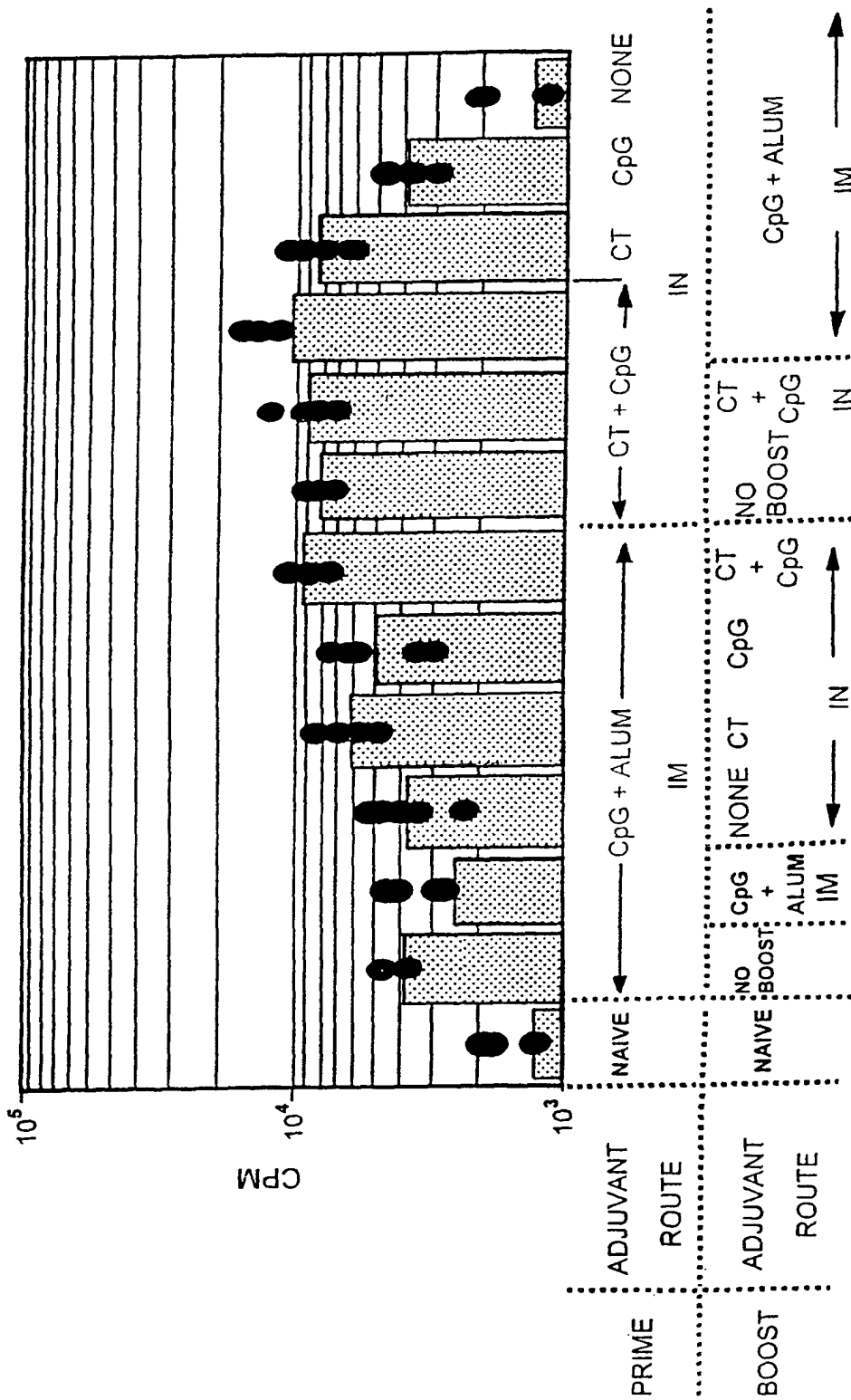


Fig. 10

11/13

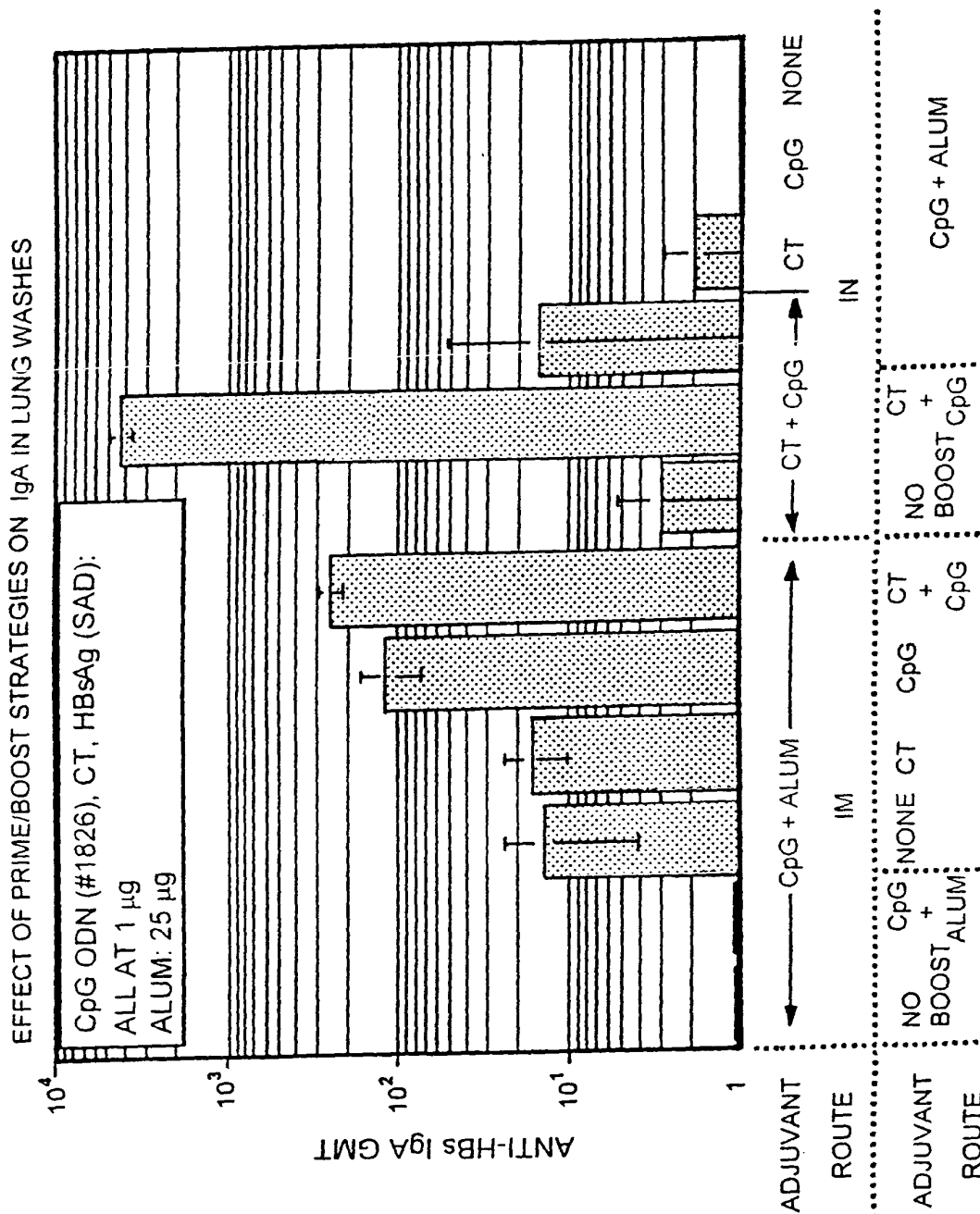


Fig. 11

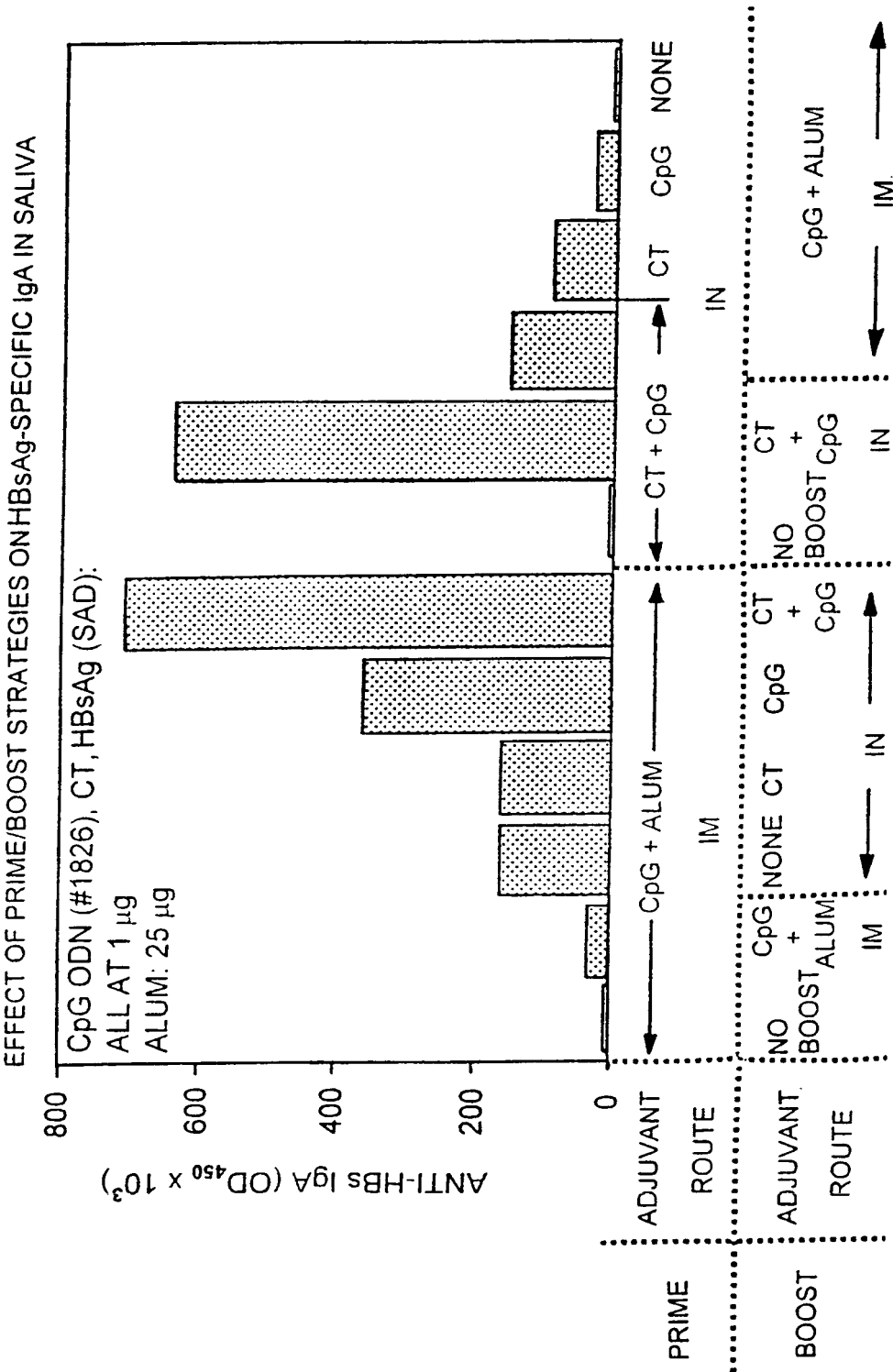


Fig. 12

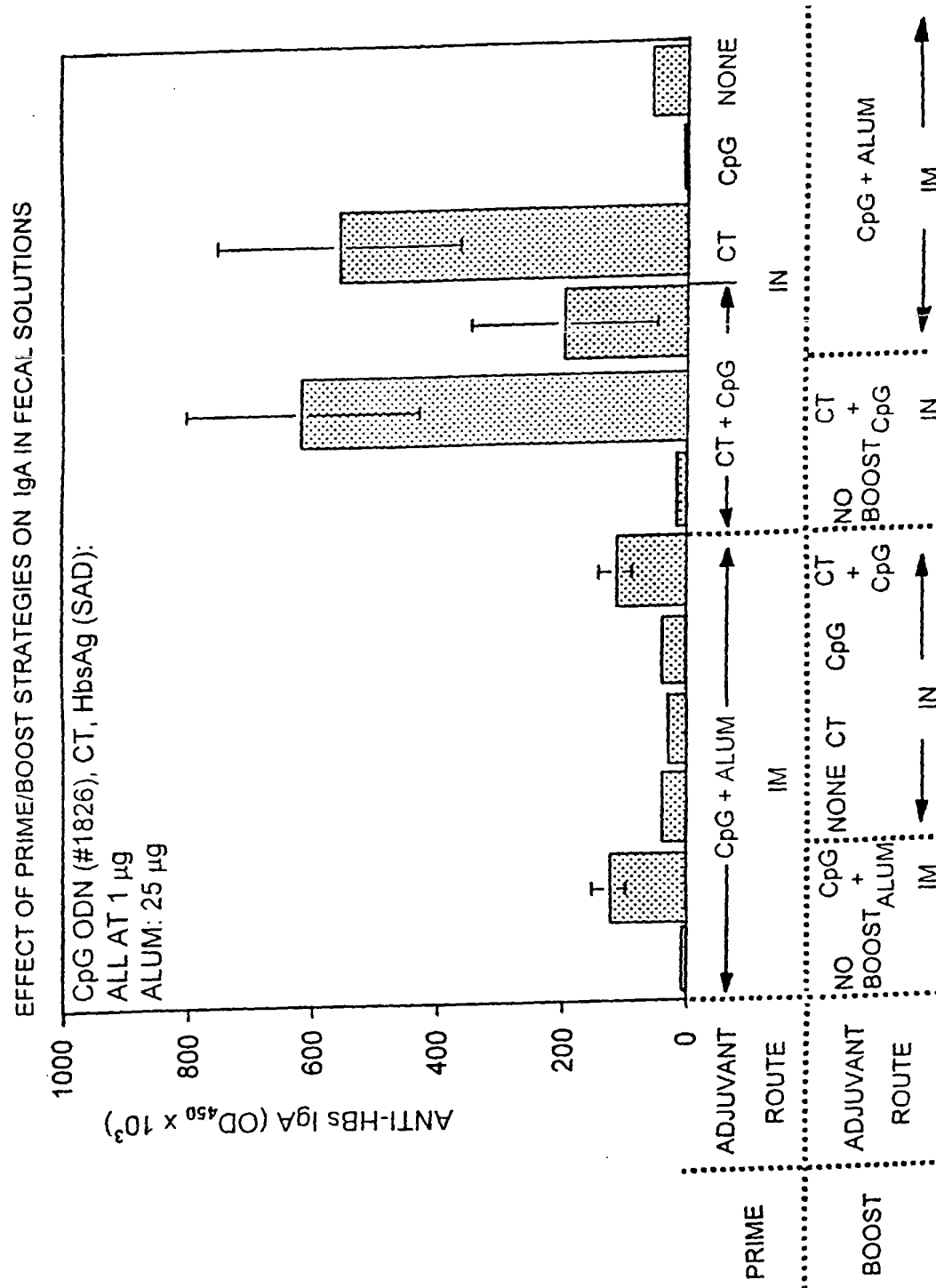


Fig. 13

-1-

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Ottawa Civic Hospital Loeb Research Institute

<120> Methods and Products for Inducing  
Mucosal Immunity

<130> C1040/7006WO/HCL

<150> US 60/086,393

<151> 1998-05-21

<160> 95

<170> FastSEQ for Windows Version 3.0

<210> 1

<211> 15

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 1

gctagacggtt agcgt 15

<210> 2

<211> 15

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 2

gctagatggtt agcgt 15

<210> 3

<211> 15

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<221> modified\_base

<222> (7)...(7)

<223> m5c

<400> 3

gctagacggtt agcgt 15

<210> 4

<211> 15

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<221> modified\_base

<222> (13)...(13)

<223> m5c

-2-

<400> 4  
gctagacggtt agcgt 15

<210> 5  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 5  
gcatgacggtt gagct 15

<210> 6  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 6  
atggaaggctc cagcgttctc 20

<210> 7  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 7  
atcgactctc gagcgttctc 20

<210> 8  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (3)... (3)  
<223> m5c

<400> 8  
atcgactctc gagcgttctc 20

<210> 9  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (18)... (18)  
<223> m5c

<400> 9  
atcgactctc gagcgttctc 20

<210> 10  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA

- 3 -

<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 10  
atggaagggtc caacgttctc 20

<210> 11  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 11  
gagaacgctg gaccttccat 20

<210> 12  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 12  
gagaacgctc gaccttccat 20

<210> 13  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 13  
gagaacgctc gaccttcgat 20

<210> 14  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (14)...(14)  
<223> m5c

<400> 14  
gagaacgctg gaccttccat 20

<210> 15  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 15  
gagaacgatg gaccttccat 20

<210> 16  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 16



- 4 -

gagaacgctc cagcactgat 20

<210> 17  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 17  
tccatgtcgg tcctgatgct 20

<210> 18  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (12)...(12)  
<223> m5c

<400> 18  
tccatgtcgg tcctgatgct 20

<210> 19  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 19  
tccatgacgt tcctgatgct 20

<210> 20  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 20  
tccatgtcgg tcctgctgat 20

<210> 21  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 21  
tcaacggt 8

<210> 22  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 22  
tcagcgct 8

<210> 23

<211> 8  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence  
  
 <400> 23  
 tcatcgat 8  
  
 <210> 24  
 <211> 8  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence  
  
 <400> 24  
 tcttcgaa 8  
  
 <210> 25  
 <211> 7  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence  
  
 <400> 25  
 caacggt 7  
  
 <210> 26  
 <211> 8  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence  
  
 <400> 26  
 ccaacggt 8  
  
 <210> 27  
 <211> 8  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence  
  
 <400> 27  
 aacgttct 8  
  
 <210> 28  
 <211> 8  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence  
  
 <400> 28  
 tcaacgtc 8  
  
 <210> 29  
 <211> 20  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Artificial Sequence  
  
 <400> 29  
 atggactctc cagcggttctc 20  
  
 <210> 30

- 6 -

<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 30  
atggaaggctc caacgttctc 20

<210> 31  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 31  
atcgactctc gacggttctc 20

<210> 32  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 32  
atggaggctc catcggttctc 20

<210> 33  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (14) ... (14)  
<223> m5c

<400> 33  
atcgactctc gacggttctc 20

<210> 34  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<221> modified\_base  
<222> (18) ... (18)  
<223> m5c

<400> 34  
atcgactctc gacggttctc 20

<210> 35  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 35  
tccatgtcgg tctgatgct 20

- 7 -

<210> 36  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 36  
tccatgccgg tcctgatgct 20

<210> 37  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 37  
tccatggcgg tcctgatgct 20

<210> 38  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 38  
tccatgacgg tcctgatgct 20

<210> 39  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 39  
tccatgtcga tcctgatgct 20

<210> 40  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 40  
tccatgtcgc tcctgatgct 20

<210> 41  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 41  
tccatgtcgt ccctgatgct 20

<210> 42  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 42  
tccatgacgt gcctgatgct 20

- 8 -

<210> 43  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 43  
tccataacgt tcctgatgct 20

<210> 44  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 44  
tccatgacgt ccctgatgct 20

<210> 45  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 45  
tccatcacgt gcctgatgct 20

<210> 46  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 46  
ggggtcacg ttgacggg 19

<210> 47  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 47  
ggggtcagtc gtgacggg 19

<210> 48  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 48  
gctagacgtt agtgt 15

<210> 49  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 49  
tccatgtcgt tcctgatgct 20

- 9 -

<210> 50  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 50  
accatggacg atctgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 51  
<211> 18  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 51  
tctcccagcg tgcgcat 18

<210> 52  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 52  
accatggacg aactgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 53  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 53  
accatggacg agctgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 54  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 54  
accatggacg acctgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 55  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 55  
accatggacg tactgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 56  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 56  
accatggacg gtctgtttcc cctc 24

-10-

<210> 57  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 57  
accatggacg ttctgtttcc cctc 24

<210> 58  
<211> 15  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 58  
cacgttgagg ggcac 15

<210> 59  
<211> 12  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 59  
tcagcgtgcg cc 12

<210> 60  
<211> 17  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 60  
atgacgttcc tgacgtt 17

<210> 61  
<211> 17  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 61  
tctcccagcg ggcgcac 17

<210> 62  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 62  
tccatgtcgt tcctgtcgtt 20

<210> 63  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 63  
tccatagcgt tcctagcgtt 20

-11-

<210> 64  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 64  
tcgtcgctgt ctcccccttct t 21

<210> 65  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 65  
tcctgacgtt cctgacgtt 19

<210> 66  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 66  
tcctgtcggt cctgtcggt 19

<210> 67  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 67  
tccatgtcgt ttttgtcggt 20

<210> 68  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 68  
tcctgtcggt ccttgtcggt 20

<210> 69  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 69  
tccttgtcgt tcctgtcggt 20

<210> 70  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 70  
tcctgtcggt ttttgtcggt 20



-12-

<210> 71  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 71  
tcgtcgctgt ctgcccttct t 21

<210> 72  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 72  
tcgtcgctgt tgcgctttct t 21

<210> 73  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 73  
tccatgcgtg cgtgcgtttt 20

<210> 74  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 74  
tccatgcgtt gcgttgctt 20

<210> 75  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 75  
tccacgacgt ttctgacgtt 20

<210> 76  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 76  
tcgtcgttgt cgttgctgtt 20

<210> 77  
<211> 24  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 77  
tcgtcgtttt gtcgttttgt cgtt 24

-13-

<210> 78  
<211> 22  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 78  
tcgtcgttgt cgttttgcg tt 22

<210> 79  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 79  
gcgtgcgttg tcgttgcgt t 21

<210> 80  
<211> 21  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 80  
tgtcgtttgt cgtttgcgt t 21

<210> 81  
<211> 25  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 81  
tgtcgttgtc gttgcttg tcgtt 25

<210> 82  
<211> 19  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 82  
tgtcgttgtc gttgcttg 19

<210> 83  
<211> 14  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 83  
tcgtcgtcgt cggt 14

<210> 84  
<211> 13  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 84  
tgtcgttgtc gtt 13

-14-

<210> 85  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 85  
tccatagcgt tcctagcgtt 20

<210> 86  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 86  
tccatgacgt tcctgacgtt 20

<210> 87  
<211> 6  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 87  
gtcgyt 6

<210> 88  
<211> 7  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 88  
tgtcgyt 7

<210> 89  
<211> 18  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 89  
agctatgacg ttccaagg 18

<210> 90  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 90  
tccatgacgt tcctgacgtt 20

<210> 91  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 91  
tccaggactt ctctcaggtt 20

-15-

<210> 92  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 92  
atcgactctc gaacgttctc 20

<210> 93  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 93  
tccatgtcgg tcttgacgca 20

<210> 94  
<211> 8  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 94  
tcttcgat 8

<210> 95  
<211> 20  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<400> 95  
ataggaggtc caacgttctc 20

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/US 99/11359

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 A61K39/39 A61K31/70 A61K39/00 A61K9/00

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	LIPFORD G.B. ET AL.: " CpG-containing synthetic oligonucleotides promote B and cytotoxic T cell responses to protein antigen: a new class of vaccine adjuvants " EUR. J. IMMUNOL., vol. 27, 1997, pages 2340-2344, XP002123073 the whole document	1-124
X	DAVIS H L ET AL: "CpG DNA is a potent enhancer of specific immunity in mice immunized with recombinant hepatitis B surface antigen 'published erratum appears in J Immunol 1999 Mar 1;162(5):3103!." JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, (1998 JAN 15) 160 (2) 870-6. , XP002125529 the whole document	1-124



Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.



Patent family members are listed in annex.

### Special categories of cited documents

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"Z" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

14 December 1999

Date of mailing of the international search report

28/12/1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P B 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Moreau, J

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 99/11359

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 98 18810 A (THE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA RESEARCH FOUNDATION) 7 May 1998 (1998-05-07) the whole document	1-124
P,X	MCCLUSKIE M J ET AL: "CpG DNA is a potent enhancer of specific immunity in mice immunized with recombinant hepatitis B surface antigen 'published erratum appears in J Immunol 1999 Mar 1;162(5):3103!'" JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, (1998 NOV 1) 161 (9) 4463-6. , XP002125530 the whole document	1-124
P,X	LIU H M ET AL: "Immunostimulatory CpG oligodeoxynucleotides enhance the immune response to vaccine strategies involving granulocyte- macrophage colony-stimulating factor." BLOOD, (1998 NOV 15) 92 (10) 3730-6. , XP002125531 the whole document	1-124
P,X	KLINMAN D M ET AL: "CpG motifs as immune adjuvants" VACCINE,GB,BUTTERWORTH SCIENTIFIC. GUILDFORD, vol. 17, no. 1, page 19-25 XP004139028 ISSN: 0264-410X the whole document	1-124
P,X	MOLDOVEANU Z ET AL: "CpG DNA, a novel immune enhancer for systemic and mucosal immunization with influenza virus" VACCINE,GB,BUTTERWORTH SCIENTIFIC. GUILDFORD, vol. 16, no. 11-12, page 1216-1224 XP004124627 ISSN: 0264-410X the whole document	1-124

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US 99/ 11359

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claims 1-124 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 99/11359

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9818810 A	07-05-1998	AU 5242498 A	22-05-1998
		EP 0948510 A	13-10-1999
-----			